

1  
2  
3  
4  
5



Document number: DSP0226

Date: 2006-04-05

Version: 1.0.0a

6 **Web Services for Management**  
7 **(WS-Management)**

8 **Document type: Specification**  
9 **Document status: Preliminary**  
10 **Document language: E**  
11

## Web Services for Management

12 Copyright notice

13 Copyright © 2006 Distributed Management Task Force, Inc. (DMTF). All rights reserved.

14

15 DMTF is a not-for-profit association of industry members dedicated to promoting enterprise and systems  
16 management and interoperability. Members and non-members may reproduce DMTF specifications and  
17 documents for uses consistent with this purpose, provided that correct attribution is given. As DMTF  
18 specifications may be revised from time to time, the particular version and release date should always be  
19 noted.

20 Implementation of certain elements of this standard or proposed standard may be subject to third party  
21 patent rights, including provisional patent rights (herein "patent rights"). DMTF makes no representations  
22 to users of the standard as to the existence of such rights, and is not responsible to recognize, disclose,  
23 or identify any or all such third party patent right, owners or claimants, nor for any incomplete or  
24 inaccurate identification or disclosure of such rights, owners or claimants. DMTF shall have no liability to  
25 any party, in any manner or circumstance, under any legal theory whatsoever, for failure to recognize,  
26 disclose, or identify any such third party patent rights, or for such party's reliance on the standard or  
27 incorporation thereof in its product, protocols or testing procedures. DMTF shall have no liability to any  
28 party implementing such standard, whether such implementation is foreseeable or not, nor to any patent  
29 owner or claimant, and shall have no liability or responsibility for costs or losses incurred if a standard is  
30 withdrawn or modified after publication, and shall be indemnified and held harmless by any party  
31 implementing the standard from any and all claims of infringement by a patent owner for such  
32 implementations. For information about patents held by third-parties which have notified the DMTF that, in  
33 their opinion, such patent may relate to or impact implementations of DMTF standards, visit  
34 <http://www.dmtf.org/about/policies/disclosures.php>.

35

36

# Contents

37 **1 Introduction..... 1**

38    **1.1 Requirements..... 1**

39    **1.2 Notations and Terminology..... 1**

40    **1.3 Notational Conventions..... 1**

41    **1.4 Conformance ..... 2**

42    **1.5 XML Namespaces ..... 2**

43    **1.6 Terminology..... 3**

44 **2 Addressing ..... 4**

45    **2.1 Endpoint References ..... 4**

46      2.1.1 WS-Management Default Addressing Model..... 4

47      2.1.2 Selectors ..... 10

48      2.1.3 Faults for Default Addressing Format..... 14

49      2.1.4 Service-Specific Endpoint References ..... 14

50    **2.2 Other WS-Addressing Headers ..... 14**

51    **2.3 mustUnderstand Usage ..... 15**

52    **2.4 wsa:To..... 16**

53    **2.5 wsa:ReplyTo ..... 17**

54    **2.6 wsa:FaultTo ..... 18**

55    **2.7 wsa:MessageID and wsa:RelatesTo ..... 19**

56    **2.8 wsa:Action..... 20**

57    **2.9 wsa:From..... 23**

58 **3 WS-Management Control Headers..... 23**

59    **3.1 Operation Timeout ..... 23**

60    **3.2 Maximum Envelope Size ..... 24**

61    **3.3 Locale..... 25**

62    **3.4 Options..... 26**

63    **3.5 Returned EPR ..... 29**

64 **4 Resource Access..... 30**

65    **4.1 Introduction ..... 30**

66    **4.2 WS-Transfer ..... 30**

67    **4.3 Addressing Uniformity..... 32**

68    **4.4 WS-Transfer:Get ..... 33**

69    **4.5 WS-Transfer>Delete..... 33**

70    **4.6 WS-Transfer>Create..... 34**

## Web Services for Management

71	<b>4.7</b>	<b>WS-Transfer:Put</b> .....	<b>36</b>
72	<b>4.8</b>	<b>Fragment-Level WS-Transfer</b> .....	<b>38</b>
73	<b>4.9</b>	<b>Fragment-Level WS-Transfer:Get</b> .....	<b>40</b>
74	<b>4.10</b>	<b>Fragment-Level WS-Transfer:Put</b> .....	<b>42</b>
75	<b>4.11</b>	<b>Fragment-Level WS-Transfer:Create</b> .....	<b>44</b>
76	<b>4.12</b>	<b>Fragment-Level WS-Transfer&gt;Delete</b> .....	<b>46</b>
77	<b>5</b>	<b><i>WS-Enumeration</i></b> .....	<b>47</b>
78	<b>5.1</b>	<b>Introduction</b> .....	<b>47</b>
79	<b>5.2</b>	<b>WS-Enumeration:Enumerate</b> .....	<b>48</b>
80	5.2.1	General .....	48
81	5.2.2	Enumeration "Count" Option .....	49
82	5.2.3	Optimization For Enumerations With Small Result Sets .....	50
83	<b>5.3</b>	<b>Filter Interpretation</b> .....	<b>53</b>
84	<b>5.4</b>	<b>WS-Enumeration:Pull</b> .....	<b>55</b>
85	<b>5.3</b>	<b>WS-Enumeration:Release</b> .....	<b>57</b>
86	<b>5.4</b>	<b>Ad-Hoc Queries and Fragment-Level Enumerations</b> .....	<b>58</b>
87	<b>5.5</b>	<b>Enumeration of EPRs</b> .....	<b>58</b>
88	<b>6</b>	<b><i>Custom Actions (Methods)</i></b> .....	<b>60</b>
89	<b>6.1</b>	<b>General</b> .....	<b>60</b>
90	<b>7</b>	<b><i>Eventing</i></b> .....	<b>61</b>
91	<b>7.1</b>	<b>General</b> .....	<b>61</b>
92	<b>7.2</b>	<b>Subscribe</b> .....	<b>61</b>
93	7.2.1	General .....	61
94	7.2.2	Filtering .....	63
95	7.2.3	Connection Retries .....	65
96	7.2.4	wse:SubscribeResponse .....	66
97	7.2.5	Heartbeats .....	66
98	7.2.6	Bookmarks .....	68
99	7.2.7	Delivery Modes .....	70
100	7.2.8	Event Action URI .....	71
101	7.2.9	Delivery Sequencing and Acknowledgement .....	71
102	7.2.10	Push Mode .....	72
103	7.2.11	PushWithAck Mode .....	73
104	7.2.12	Batched Delivery Mode .....	73
105	7.2.13	Pull Delivery Mode .....	77
106	<b>7.3</b>	<b>GetStatus</b> .....	<b>78</b>
107	<b>7.4</b>	<b>Unsubscribe</b> .....	<b>78</b>
108	<b>7.5</b>	<b>Renew</b> .....	<b>79</b>
109	<b>7.6</b>	<b>SubscriptionEnd</b> .....	<b>79</b>
110	<b>7.7</b>	<b>Acknowledgement of Delivery</b> .....	<b>80</b>
111	<b>7.8</b>	<b>Refusal of Delivery</b> .....	<b>81</b>

112 7.9 Dropped Events ..... 81

113 8 Metadata and Discovery ..... 83

114 9 Security..... 85

115 9.1 Introduction ..... 85

116 9.2 Security Profiles ..... 86

117 9.3 Security Considerations for Event Subscriptions..... 86

118 9.4 Including Credentials with a Subscription ..... 87

119 9.5 Correlation of Events with Subscription..... 90

120 9.6 Transport-Level Authentication Failure..... 91

121 9.7 Security Implications of Third-Party Subscriptions ..... 91

122 10 Transports and Message Encoding ..... 91

123 10.1 Introduction ..... 91

124 10.2 SOAP ..... 91

125 10.3 Lack of Response..... 93

126 10.4 Replay of Messages ..... 93

127 10.5 Encoding Limits ..... 93

128 10.6 Binary Attachments ..... 94

129 10.7 Case-Sensitivity ..... 94

130 11 Faults ..... 94

131 11.1 Introduction ..... 94

132 11.2 Fault Encoding ..... 95

133 11.3 NotUnderstood Faults ..... 96

134 11.4 Degenerate Faults..... 97

135 11.5 Fault Extensibility ..... 97

136 11.6 Master Fault Table ..... 98

137 11.6.1 wsman:AccessDenied..... 98

138 11.6.2 wsa>ActionNotSupported ..... 98

139 11.6.3 wsman:AlreadyExists ..... 99

140 11.6.4 wsen:CannotProcessFilter ..... 99

141 11.6.5 wsman:Concurrency ..... 100

142 11.6.6 wse:DeliveryModeRequestedUnavailable ..... 100

143 11.6.7 wsman:DeliveryRefused ..... 101

144 11.6.8 wsa:DestinationUnreachable..... 101

145 11.6.9 wsman:EncodingLimit ..... 102

146 11.6.10 wsa:EndpointUnavailable ..... 103

147 11.6.11 wse:EventSourceUnableToProcess ..... 104

148 11.6.12 wsen:FilterDialectRequestedUnavailable ..... 104

149 11.6.13 wse:FilteringNotSupported ..... 105

150 11.6.14 wsen:FilteringNotSupported ..... 105

151 11.6.15 wse:FilteringRequestedUnavailable..... 106

## Web Services for Management

152	11.6.16	wsman:InternalError.....	106
153	11.6.17	wsman:FragmentDialectNotSupported.....	107
154	11.6.18	wsman:InvalidBookmark.....	107
155	11.6.19	wsen:InvalidEnumerationContext.....	108
156	11.6.20	wse:InvalidExpirationTime.....	108
157	11.6.21	wsen:InvalidExpirationTime.....	109
158	11.6.22	wse:InvalidMessage.....	109
159	11.6.23	wsa:InvalidMessageInformationHeader.....	109
160	11.6.24	wsman:InvalidOptions.....	110
161	11.6.25	wsman:InvalidParameter.....	110
162	11.6.26	wxf:InvalidRepresentation.....	111
163	11.6.27	wsman:InvalidSelectors.....	112
164	11.6.28	wsa:MessageInformationHeaderRequired.....	112
165	11.6.29	wsman:NoAck.....	113
166	11.6.30	wsman:QuotaLimit.....	113
167	11.6.31	wsman:SchemaValidationError.....	113
168	11.6.32	wsen:TimedOut.....	114
169	11.6.33	wsman:TimedOut.....	114
170	11.6.34	wse:UnableToRenew.....	115
171	11.6.35	wse:UnsupportedExpirationType.....	115
172	11.6.36	wsen:UnsupportedExpirationType.....	115
173	11.6.37	wsman:UnsupportedFeature.....	116
174	<b>12</b>	<b><i>Appendix A: HTTP(S) Transport and Security Profile</i></b> .....	<b>117</b>
175	<b>12.1</b>	<b>Introduction</b> .....	<b>117</b>
176	<b>12.2</b>	<b>HTTP(S) Encoding</b> .....	<b>117</b>
177	<b>12.3</b>	<b>IPSec and HTTP</b> .....	<b>119</b>
178	<b>12.4</b>	<b>HTTP(S) Security Profiles</b> .....	<b>119</b>
179	<b>12.5</b>	<b>http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/secprofile/http/basic</b> .....	<b>119</b>
180	<b>12.6</b>	<b>http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/secprofile/http/digest</b> .....	<b>120</b>
181	<b>12.7</b>	<b>http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/secprofile/https/basic</b> .....	<b>120</b>
182	<b>12.8</b>	<b>http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/secprofile/https/digest</b> .....	<b>121</b>
183	<b>12.9</b>	<b>http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/secprofile/https/mutual</b> .....	<b>121</b>
184	<b>12.10</b>	<b>http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/secprofile/https/mutual/basic</b> .....	<b>122</b>
185	<b>12.11</b>	<b>http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/secprofile/https/mutual/digest</b> .....	<b>123</b>
186	<b>12.12</b>	<b>http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/secprofile/https/spnego-kerberos</b> .....	<b>123</b>
187	<b>12.13</b>	<b>http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/secprofile/https/mutual/spnego-kerberos</b>	<b>123</b>
188			
189	<b>12.14</b>	<b>http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/secprofile/http/spnego-kerberos</b> .....	<b>124</b>
190	<b>13</b>	<b><i>Appendix B: XPath Support</i></b> .....	<b>124</b>
191	<b>13.1</b>	<b>Level 1</b> .....	<b>125</b>
192	<b>13.2</b>	<b>Level 2</b> .....	<b>127</b>
193	<b>14</b>	<b><i>Appendix C: WS-Management XSD</i></b> .....	<b>129</b>
194	<b>15</b>	<b><i>Appendix D: Authors and Acknowledgements</i></b> .....	<b>129</b>

195    **15.1 Additional Contributors..... 129**  
196    **16 Appendix E: References ..... 130**  
197

**Abstract**

199 This specification describes a general SOAP-based protocol for managing systems such as PCs, servers,  
200 devices, Web services and other applications, and other manageable entities.

201

**Authors**

202 Akhil Arora, Sun Microsystems, Inc.  
203 Josh Cohen, Microsoft Corporation (Chair)  
204 Jim Davis, WBEM Solutions, Inc.  
205 Mike Dutch, Symantec Corporation  
206 Zulah Eckert, BEA Software  
207 Eugene Golovinsky, BMC Software, Inc.  
208 Yasuhiro Hagiwara, NEC Corporation  
209 Jackson He, Intel Corporation  
210 David Hines, Intel Corporation  
211 Reiji Inohara, NEC Corporation  
212 Christane Kämpfe, Fujitsu-Siemens Computers  
213 Vincent Kowalski, BMC Software, Inc.  
214 Vishwa Kumbalimutt, Microsoft Corporation  
215 Richard Landau, Dell Inc.  
216 James Martin, Intel Corporation  
217 Raymond McCollum, Microsoft Corporation (Editor)  
218 Milan Milenkovic, Intel Corporation  
219 Paul Montgomery, Advanced Micro Devices, Inc.  
220 Bryan Murray, Hewlett-Packard (Editor)  
221 Alexander Nosov, Microsoft Corporation  
222 Abhay Padlia, Novell, Inc.  
223 Roger Reich, Symantec Corporation  
224 Brian Reistad, Microsoft (Editor)  
225 Larry Russon, Novell, Inc.  
226 Jeffrey Schlimmer, Microsoft Corporation  
227 Dr. Hemal Shah, Broadcom  
228 Sharon Smith, Intel Corporation  
229 Enoch Suen, Dell Inc.  
230 Vijay Tewari, Intel Corporation  
231 William Vambenepe, Hewlett-Packard  
232 Kirk Wilson, CA, Inc.  
233 Dr. Jerry Xie, Intel Corporation  
  
234

**Status**

236 The first edition of this specification, published in October 2004, was a pre-release version for public  
237 comment. The February 2005 edition was the basis of successful interoperation tests with multiple  
238 vendors. The June 2005 edition is based on the corrections and feedback from those tests. This version  
239 is a DMTF submission in progress.

## 240 1 Introduction

241 The Web services architecture is based on a suite of specifications that define rich functions and that may  
242 be composed to meet varied service requirements.

243 A crucial application for these services is in the area of systems management. To promote interoperability  
244 between management applications and managed resources, this specification identifies a core set of Web  
245 service specifications and usage requirements that expose a common set of operations central to all  
246 systems management. This comprises the abilities to

- 247 • Get, put (update), create, and delete individual resource instances, such as settings and dynamic  
248 values,
- 249 • Enumerate the contents of containers and collections, such as large tables and logs,
- 250 • Subscribe to events emitted by managed resources, and
- 251 • Execute specific management methods with strongly typed input and output parameters.

252 In each of these areas of scope, this specification defines minimal implementation requirements for  
253 conformant Web service implementations. An implementation is free to extend beyond this set of  
254 operations, and may also choose not to support one or more areas of functionality listed above if that  
255 functionality is not appropriate to the target device or system.

### 256 1.1 Requirements

257 This specification intends to meet the following requirements:

- 258 • Constrain Web services protocols and formats so that Web services can be implemented with a  
259 small footprint in both hardware and software management services,
- 260 • Define minimum requirements for compliance without constraining richer implementations;
- 261 • Ensure composability with other Web services specifications;
- 262 • Minimize additional mechanisms beyond the current Web service architecture.

### 263 1.2 Notations and Terminology

264 This section specifies the notations, namespaces, and terminology used in this specification.

### 265 1.3 Notational Conventions

266 In this document, the keywords "MUST", "MUST NOT", "REQUIRED", "SHALL", "SHALL NOT",  
267 "SHOULD", "SHOULD NOT", "RECOMMENDED", "MAY", and "OPTIONAL" are to be interpreted as  
268 described in RFC 2119 [[RFC 2119](#)].

269 This specification uses the following syntax to define normative outlines for messages.

- 270 • The syntax appears as an XML instance, but values in italics indicate data types instead of values.
- 271 • Characters are appended to elements and attributes to indicate cardinality:
  - 272 – "?" (0 or 1)
  - 273 – "\*" (0 or more)
  - 274 – "+" (1 or more)
- 275 • The character "|" indicates a choice between alternatives.
- 276 • The characters "[" and "]" indicate that enclosed items are to be treated as a group with respect to  
277 cardinality or choice.

## Web Services for Management

- 278 • An ellipsis ("...") indicates a point of extensibility that allows other child or attribute content. Additional  
279 children and/or attributes MAY be added at the indicated extension points but MUST NOT contradict  
280 the semantics of the parent and/or owner, respectively. If a receiver does not recognize an  
281 extension, the receiver SHOULD NOT process the message and MAY fault.
- 282 • XML namespace prefixes (see Table 1) indicate the namespace of the element being defined.

283 **Throughout the document**, whitespace within XML element values is used for readability. In practice, a  
284 service should accept and strip leading and trailing whitespace within element values as if whitespace  
285 had not been used. (See conformance rule R10.3-9.)

### 286 1.4 Conformance

287 An implementation is not conformant with this specification if it fails to satisfy one or more of the MUST or  
288 REQUIRED level requirements defined in the conformance rules for each section, as indicated by the  
289 following format:

290 **Rnnnn:** Rule text

291 General conformance rules are defined as follows:

292 **R1.4-1:** To be conformant, the service MUST comply with all the rules defined in  
293 this specification. Items marked with MUST are required, and items  
294 marked with SHOULD are highly advised to maximize interoperation. Items  
295 marked with MAY indicate the preferred implementation for expected  
296 features, but interoperation should not be affected if they are ignored.

297 **R1.4-2:** A SOAP node MUST NOT use the XML namespace identifier for this  
298 specification (see section 1.5) unless it complies with the conformance  
299 rules in this specification.

300 This specification does not mandate that all messages and operations must be supported. It only requires  
301 that any supported message or operation obey the conformance rules for that message or operation. It is  
302 important that services not use the XML namespace identifier for WS-Management in SOAP operations in  
303 a manner inconsistent with the rules defined in this specification.

### 304 1.5 XML Namespaces

305 **R1.5-1:** Conformant services of this specification MUST use this XML namespace  
306 Universal Resource Identifier (URI):

307  
308 (1) <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman.xsd>

309 Table 1 lists XML namespaces used in this specification. The choice of any namespace prefix is arbitrary  
310 and not semantically significant.

**Table 1 – Prefixes and XML Namespaces Used in this Specification**

Prefix	XML Namespace	Specification
wsman	<a href="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman.xsd">http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman.xsd</a>	This specification
wsmid	<a href="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/identity/1/wsmanidentity.xsd">http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/identity/1/wsmanidentity.xsd</a>	This specification - discovery of supported protocol versions.
s	<a href="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope">http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope</a>	SOAP 1.2 [SOAP 1.2]
xs	<a href="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema</a>	XML Schema [Part 1, 2]
wsdl	<a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/wsdl">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/wsdl</a>	WSDL/1.1 [WSDL 1.1]
wsa	<a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing</a>	WS-Addressing [WS-Addressing]
wse	<a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing</a>	WS-Eventing [WS-Eventing]
wsen	<a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/enumeration">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/enumeration</a>	WS-Enumeration [WS-Enumeration]
wxf	<a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/transfer">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/transfer</a>	WS-Transfer [WS-Transfer]
wsp	<a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/policy">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/policy</a>	WS-Policy [WS-Policy]
wst	<a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/02/trust">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/02/trust</a>	WS-Trust
wsse	<a href="http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-wss-wssecurity-secext-1.0.xsd">http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-wss-wssecurity-secext-1.0.xsd</a>	WS-Security
wsu	<a href="http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-wss-wssecurity-utility-1.0.xsd">http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-wss-wssecurity-utility-1.0.xsd</a>	WS-Security Utility

## 312 1.6 Terminology

313 For the purposes of this document, the following terms and definitions apply.

### 314 Client

315 The client application using the Web services defined in this document to access the management  
316 service.

### 317 Service

318 An application that provides management services to clients by exposing the Web services defined in this  
319 document. Typically, a service is equivalent to the network "listener," is associated with a physical  
320 transport address, and is essentially a type of manageability access point.

### 321 Managed Resource

322 A Managed Resource is an entity that can be of interest to an administrator. It may be a physical object  
323 such as a laptop computer or a printer or an abstract entity such as a service.

### 324 Resource Class

325 A Resource Class is an abstract representation (type) of a managed resource. It defines the  
326 representation of management-related operations and properties. An example of a resource class is the  
327 description of operations and properties for a set of laptop computers.

### 328 Resource Instance

329 A Resource Instance is an instantiation of a resource class. An example is the set of management-  
330 related operations and property values for a specific laptop computer

## Web Services for Management

### 331 **Selector**

332 A resource-relative name and value pair which acts as an instance-level discriminant when used with the  
333 default WS-Management endpoint reference format. This is essentially a filter or "key" which identifies  
334 the desired instance of the resource. This may not be present when service-specific endpoint reference  
335 formats are used.

336

337 The relationship of services to resource classes and instances is as follows:

- 338 • A service consists of one or more resource classes.
- 339 • A resource class may contain zero or more instances.
- 340 • If more than one instance for a resource class exists, they are isolated or identified through parts of  
341 the SOAP address for the resource, such as the ResourceURI and SelectorSet fields in the default  
342 addressing format.

## 343 **2 Addressing**

### 344 **2.1 Endpoint References**

345 WS-Management uses WS-Addressing endpoint references (also known as EPRs) as the addressing  
346 model for individual resource instances. WS-Management also defines a default endpoint reference  
347 format for use in addressing resources. In cases where this default addressing model is not appropriate,  
348 such as systems with well-established EPR formats or with opaque EPRs retrieved from a discovery  
349 service, services may use those service-specific addressing models, as long as they are based on WS-  
350 Addressing.

351 **R2.1-1:** All messages that are addressed to a resource class or instance that are  
352 referenced by an EPR MUST follow the rules for representing content from  
353 the EPR (the address and reference parameters) in the SOAP message.  
354 This also applies to continuation messages such as wsen:Pull or  
355 wsen:Release, which continue an operation begun in a previous message.  
356 Even though there is contextual information in such messages binding  
357 them to a previous operation, the information from the WS-Addressing EPR  
358 is still required in the message to help route it to the correct handler.  
359

360 This rule clarifies that messages such as wsen:Pull or wse:Renew still require a full EPR. For wsen:Pull,  
361 for example, this would be the same as the original wsen:Enumerate, even though  
362 wsen:EnumerateResponse returns a context object which would seem to obviate the need for the EPR.  
363 The EPR is still required to route the message properly. Similarly, the wse:Renew request uses the EPR  
364 obtained by the wse:SubscriptionManager received in the wse:SubscribeResponse.

#### 365 **2.1.1 WS-Management Default Addressing Model**

366 WS-Management defines a default format for endpoint references to resources. A service is not required  
367 to use this format for endpoint references, but it is suitable for many new implementations and can  
368 increase the chances of successful interoperation between clients and services.

369 The remainder of this document often uses examples of this format which contain its component parts,  
370 the ResourceURI and SelectorSet SOAP headers.

371 Description and use of this format in this specification by no means indicates that support for this format  
372 of endpoint reference is a requirement for a conformant service.

373 All of the normative text, examples, and conformance rules in section 2.1.1 and 2.1.2 presume that the  
 374 service is based on the default addressing format. In cases where this format is not in use, then these  
 375 rules do not apply.

376 The default endpoint reference format uses a representation which is a tuple of the following SOAP  
 377 headers:

- 378 1) **wsa:To** (required): the transport address of the service
- 379 2) **wsman:ResourceURI** (required if the default addressing format is used): the URI of the resource  
 380 class representation or instance representation.
- 381 3) **wsman:SelectorSet** (optional): Identifies or "selects" the resource instance to be accessed if more  
 382 than once instance of a resource class exists.

383 The wsman:ResourceURI value should be marked with an s:mustUnderstand attribute set to "true" in all  
 384 messages which make use of the default address format. Otherwise, a service which does not  
 385 understand this format may inadvertently return a resource which was not requested by the client.

386 The WS-Management default format for endpoint references is defined in SOAP as follows:

387

388

389

390

391

392

393

394

395

396

397

398

399

400

401

```
(1) <wsa:EndpointReference>
(2)   <wsa:Address>
(3)     Network address
(4)   </wsa:Address>
(5)   <wsa:ReferenceParameters>
(6)     <wsman:ResourceURI> resource URI </wsman:ResourceURI>
(7)     <wsman:SelectorSet>
(8)       <wsman:Selector Name="selector-name"> *
(9)       Selector-value
(10)    </wsman:Selector>
(11)   </wsman:SelectorSet> ?
(12) </wsa:ReferenceParameters>
(13) </wsa:EndpointReference>
(14) ...
```

402 The following describes additional, normative constraints on the outline listed above:

403 **wsa:Address**

404 The URI of the transport address.

405 **wsa:ReferenceParameters/wsman:ResourceURI**

406 The URI of the resource class or instance to be accessed. Typically, this represents the resource  
 407 class, but may represent the instance. Both this URI and the wsa:To URI form the full address of  
 408 the resource class or instance.

409 **wsa:ReferenceParameters/wsman:SelectorSet**

410 The optional set of Selectors as described in section 2.1.2. These are used to select an instance if  
 411 the ResourceURI represents a multi-instanced target.

412 The above format is used when defining addresses in metadata, or when specifying return addresses in  
 413 message bodies, such as the wse:NotifyTo or the wsa:ReplyTo and wsa:FaultTo cases.

414 When it is time to actually use the above address in a real SOAP message, WS-Addressing specifies that  
 415 translations take place and the headers are flattened out. While this is described in WS-Addressing, it is  
 416 worth repeating because of its critical nature.

## Web Services for Management

417 As an example, consider the following endpoint reference definition:  
418

```
419 <wsa:EndpointReference>  
420   <wsa:Address> Address </wsa:Address>  
421   <wsa:ReferenceProperties>  
422     <other>UserProp>prop-value</other>UserProp>  
423   </wsa:ReferenceProperties>  
424   <wsa:ReferenceParameters>  
425     <wsman:ResourceURI>resURI</wsman:ResourceURI>  
426     <wsman:SelectorSet>  
427       <wsman:Selector Name="Selector-name">  
428         Selector-value  
429       </wsman:Selector>  
430     </wsman:SelectorSet>  
431     <other>UserParam> param </other>UserParam>  
432   </wsa:ReferenceParameters>  
433 </wsa:EndpointReference>
```

434 This address definition becomes the following when actually used in a SOAP message, in which  
435 `wsa:Address` becomes `wsa:To`, and the reference properties and reference parameters are unwrapped  
436 and juxtaposed:  
437

```
438 <s:Envelope ...>  
439   <s:Header>  
440     <wsa:To> Address </wsa:To>  
441     <other>UserProp>prop-value</other>UserProp>  
442     <wsman:ResourceURI>resURI</wsman:ResourceURI>  
443     <wsman:SelectorSet>  
444       <wsman:Selector Name="Selector-name">  
445         Selector-value  
446       </wsman:Selector>  
447     </wsman:SelectorSet>  
448     <other>UserParam> param </other>UserParam>  
449     ...
```

450 Note also that in addition to the WS-Management-defined values, the user may additionally specify client-  
451 specific reference parameters (see *other>UserParam* above) which also are included in the message if  
452 they are part of the `wsa:EndpointReference`.

453 Note that the `wsa:To`, `wsman:ResourceURI`, and `wsman:SelectorSet` work together to *reference* the  
454 resource instance to be managed, but the actual *method* or *operation* to be executed against this  
455 resource is indicated by the `wsa:Action` header.

456 Here is an example of WS-Addressing headers based on the default format in an actual message:

```
457  
458 (1) <s:Envelope  
459 (2)   xmlns:s="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope"  
460 (3)   xmlns:wsa="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing"  
461 (4)   xmlns:wsman="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman.xsd">  
462 (5) <s:Header>  
463 (6)   ...  
464 (7) <wsa:To>http://123.99.222.36/wsman</wsa:To>
```

```

465 (8) <wsman:ResourceURI>http://acme.org/hardware/2005/02/storage/physDisk</wsman:ResourceURI>
466 (9) <wsman:SelectorSet>
467 (10) <wsman:Selector Name="LUN"> 2 </wsman:Selector>
468 (11) </wsman:SelectorSet>
469 (12) <wsa:Action> http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/transfer/Get </wsa:Action>
470 (13) <wsa:MessageID> urn:uuid:d9726315-bc91-430b-9ed8-ce5ffb858a91 </wsa:MessageID>
471 (14) ...
472 (15) </s:Header>
473 (16) <s:Body> ...
474 (17)

```

475 The following definitions apply to the above message example:

476 **wsa:To**

477 The network (or transport-level) address of the service

478 **wsman:ResourceURI**

479 The ResourceURI of the resource class or resource instance to be accessed. .

480 **wsman:SelectorSet**

481 A wrapper for the Selectors

482 **wsman:SelectorSet/wsman:Selector**

483 Identifies or selects the resource instance to be accessed, if more than one instance of the resource  
484 exists. In this case, the Selector is "LUN" (logical unit number), and the selected device is unit  
485 number "2".

486 **wsa:Action**

487 Identifies which operation is to be carried out against the resource, in this case, a "Get".

488 **wsa:MessageID**

489 Identifies this specific message uniquely for tracking and correlation purposes. The format defined in  
490 RFC 4122 is often used in the examples in this specification, but is not required.

491

492 **R2.1.1-1:** The format of the **wsman:ResourceURI** is unconstrained provided that it meets RFC  
493 3986 requirements.

494

495 The format and syntax of the ResourceURI is any valid URI according to RFC 3986. While there is no  
496 default scheme, http: and urn: are common defaults. If http: is used, users may expect to find web-based  
497 documentation of the resource at that address. The **wsa:To** and the **wsman:ResourceURI** work together  
498 to define the actual resource being targeted:

```

499 (18) <s:Header>
500 (19) <wsa:To> http://123.15.166.67/wsman </wsa:To>
501 (20) <wsman:ResourceURI> http://schemas.acme.org/2005/02/hardware/physDisk </wsman:ResourceURI>
502 (21) ...

```

504 It is considered a good practice for vendor-specific or organization-specific URIs to contain the internet  
505 domain name in the first token sequence after the scheme, such as "acme.org" above.

506

507

508 **R2.1.1-2:** The **wsman:ResourceURI** reference parameter is REQUIRED in messages

## Web Services for Management

509 with the following wsa:Action URIs:

510

<http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/transfer/Get>  
<http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/transfer/Put>  
<http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/transfer/Create>  
<http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/transfer/Delete>  
<http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/enumeration/Enumerate>  
<http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/enumeration/Pull>  
<http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/enumeration/Renew>  
<http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/enumeration/GetStatus>  
<http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/enumeration/Release>  
<http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/Subscribe>

511 Note that the following messages require the EPR to be returned in the  
512 wse:SubscriptionManager element of the wse:SubscribeResponse  
513 message (WS-Eventing), so the format of the EPR is determined by the  
514 service and may or may not include the ResourceURI:

515

<http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/Renew>  
<http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/GetStatus>  
<http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/Unsubscribe>

516

517 While the ResourceURI is required, it may be short and of a very simple form, such as

518 *<http://sample.com/>\**

519 *<http://sample.com/resource>*

520 *...etc.*

521

522

523 **R2.1.1-3:** For the request message of custom actions (methods), the ResourceURI header MAY be  
524 present in the message to help route the message to the correct handler.

525

526 **R2.1.1-4:** The ResourceURI SHOULD NOT appear in other messages, such as responses or  
527 events.

528

529 In practice, the wsman:ResourceURI is only required in requests to reference the targeted resource class.  
530 Responses are not accessing the WS-Management or SOAP space, so the wsman:ResourceURI has no  
531 meaning in that context.

532

533 **R2.1.1-5:** If the wsman:ResourceURI is missing, the service MUST issue a  
534 wsa:DestinationUnreachable fault with a detail code of  
535 <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InvalidResourceURI>.

536

537 **R2.1.1-6:** The wsman:ResourceURI MUST only be used to indicate the identity of a resource, but  
 538 MAY NOT be used to indicate the action being applied to that resource, which is properly expressed  
 539 using the wsa:Action URI.

540  
 541 **R2.1.1-7:** The ResourceURI MUST be unique and unambiguous within the scope of a service.  
 542

543 Otherwise, the service has no idea which resource is actually being referenced or accessed.

544 Note that custom-WSDL based methods should have both a ResourceURI identity from the perspective  
 545 of addressing, and have a wsa:Action from the point of view of execution. In many cases, the  
 546 ResourceURI is simply a pseudonym for the WSDL identity and Port, and the wsa:Action is the specific  
 547 method within that Port (or Interface) definition.

548 While the URI could theoretically be used alone to define an instance of a multi-instance resource, it is  
 549 recommended that the wsa:To be used to locate the WS-Management service, the wsman:ResourceURI  
 550 be used to identify the resource class, and that wsman:SelectorSet be used to reference the resource  
 551 instance. If the resource only consists of a single instance, then the wsman:ResourceURI alone refers to  
 552 the singleton instance.

553 This usage is not a strict requirement, just a guideline. The service may use distinct Selectors for any  
 554 given operation, even against the same resource class, and may allow or require Selectors for  
 555 wsen:Enumerate operations.

556 See also the recommendations in section 4.3 regarding addressing uniformity.

557  
 558 **R2.1.1-8:** If the wsman:ResourceURI is of the incorrect form or absent, the service SHOULD return  
 559 a wsa:DestinationUnreachable fault with a detail code of  
 560 <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InvalidResourceURI>.

561  
 562 Note that custom actions have two distinct identities: The ResourceURI which can identify the WSDL and  
 563 Port (or Interface), and the wsa:Action which identifies the specific method. If there is only one method in  
 564 the interface, in a sense the ResourceURI and wsa:Action are identical.

565 It is not an error to utilize the wsa:Action URI for the ResourceURI of a custom method, but both will still  
 566 be required in the message for uniform processing on both clients and servers. For example, the  
 567 following action to reset a network card may have the following EPR usage:

```
568
569 (1) <s:Header>
570 (2)   <wsa:To>
571 (3)     http://1.2.3.4/wsman/
572 (4)   </wsa:To>
573 (5)   <wsman:ResourceURI> http://acme.com/2005/02/networkcards/reset </wsman:ResourceURI>
574 (6)   <wsa:Action>
575 (7)     http://acme.com/2005/02/networkcards/reset
576 (8)   </wsa:Action>
577 (9)   ...
```

578 In many cases, the ResourceURI will be equivalent to a WSDL name and port, and the wsa:Action URI  
 579 contain an additional token as a suffix:

```
580
581 (10) <s:Header>
```

## Web Services for Management

```
582 (11) <wsa:To>
583 (12)   http://1.2.3.4/wsman
584 (13) </wsa:To>
585 (14) <wsman:ResourceURI>http://acme.com/2005/02/networkcards</wsman:ResourceURI>
586 (15) <wsa:Action>
587 (16)   http://acme.com/2005/02/networkcards/reset
588 (17) </wsa:Action>
589 (18)   ...
```

590 And the ResourceURI may be completely unrelated to the wsa:Action:

```
591 (19) <s:Header>
592 (20)   <wsa:To>
593 (21)     http://1.2.3.4/wsman
594 (22)   </wsa:To>
595 (23) <wsman:ResourceURI>http://acme.com/products/management/networkcards</wsman:ResourceURI>
596 (24) <wsa:Action>
597 (25)   http://acme.com/2005/02/netcards/reset
598 (26) </wsa:Action>
```

600 All of these are legal usage.

601 As with other WS-Management operations, the endpoint reference described by wsa:Address, and  
602 wsman:ResourceURI (and optionally the wsman:SelectorSet values) identifies the event source to which  
603 the subscription is directed. In many cases, the ResourceURI identifies a real or virtual event log and the  
604 subscription is intended to provide real-time notifications of any new entries added to the log. In many  
605 cases, the wsman:SelectorSet element may not be used as part of the endpoint reference.

### 606 2.1.2 Selectors

607 In the WS-Management default addressing format, selectors are optional elements used to reference  
608 instances within a resource class. For operations such as wxf:Get or wxf:Put, the selectors are used to  
609 reference a single instance of the resource class referenced by the ResourceURI. For operations such as  
610 wsen:Enumerate, the selectors may be used to identify a subset of instances within the resource class  
611 referenced by the *ResourceURI*.

612 In practice, because the *ResourceURI* often acts as a table or a 'class', the SelectorSet element is a  
613 discriminant used to reference a specific 'row' or 'instance'. If there is only one instance of a resource  
614 class implied by the *ResourceURI*, the SelectorSet may be omitted, as the ResourceURI is acting as the  
615 full identity of the resource. If more than one Selector value is required, the entire set of Selectors is  
616 interpreted by the service in order to reference the specific instance. The Selectors are to be interpreted  
617 as being separated by implied logical AND operators.

618 The Selectors act as a 'key' mechanism against the resource class space implied by the ResourceURI.  
619 However, there is no implication that the Selector values are part of the returned resource or that  
620 Selectors be unique across instances, only that the set of all Selectors in a given message results in a  
621 reference to a set of instances of the appropriate cardinality for the operation. A SelectorSet used with  
622 wxf:Get must result in a reference to a single instance, while a SelectorSet used with wsen:Enumerate  
623 may result in a set of multiple instances." This is critical for small footprint implementations that cannot  
624 afford a full XPath processor.

625 Similarly, Selectors may be used in other operations such as wse:Subscribe to scope the domain of  
626 emitted events. See sections 5.3 and 7.2.2 for more information on using Selectors in these operations.

627 Note that in some information domains, the values referenced by the Selectors are "keys" which are part  
 628 of the resource content itself, whereas in other domains the Selectors are part of a logical or physical  
 629 directory system or search space. In these cases, the Selectors are used to reference the resource, but  
 630 are not part of the representation.

631  
 632 **R2.1.2-1:** If a resource has more than one instance, a wsman:SelectorSet element MAY be used to  
 633 distinguish which instance is targeted if the WS-Management default addressing model is in use.  
 634 Any number of wsman:Selector values may appear with the wsman:SelectorSet, as required to  
 635 identify the precise instance of the resource class. Selector names and values MAY be treated  
 636 case-insensitively or case-sensitively by the service (see 10.8), as required by the underlying  
 637 execution environment.

638 If the client needs to discover the policy on how case is interpreted, the service should provide metadata  
 639 documents which describe this. The format of such metadata is beyond the scope of this specification.

640  
 641 **R2.1.2-2:** All content within the SelectorSet element is to be treated as a single reference  
 642 parameter with a scope relative to the ResourceURI.

643  
 644 **R2.1.2-3:** A service using the WS-Management default addressing model MUST examine all  
 645 Selectors in the message and process them as if they were logically ANDed. If the set of Selectors  
 646 is incorrect for the targeted resource instance, then a wsman:InvalidSelectors fault SHOULD be  
 647 returned to the client with the following detail codes:

- 648 a) <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InsufficientSelectors> if Selectors  
 649 are missing
- 650 b) <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/TypeMismatch> if Selector values  
 651 are the wrong types
- 652 c) <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InvalidValue> if the Selector value  
 653 is of the correct type from the standpoint of XML types, but out of range or otherwise illegal in  
 654 the specific information domain.
- 655 d) <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/UnexpectedSelectors> if the Name  
 656 is not a recognized Selector name.

657  
 658 **R2.1.2-4:** The Selector Name attribute MUST NOT be duplicated at the same level of nesting. The  
 659 service SHOULD return a wsman:InvalidSelectors fault with a detail code of  
 660 <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/DuplicateSelectors> if this occurs.

661 This specification does not mandate the use of Selectors. Some implementations may decide to use  
 662 complex URI schemes in which the ResourceURI itself implicitly identifies the instance. However, most  
 663 information domains will benefit from the separation of type and instance identities into separate  
 664 addressing elements.

665 The format of the SelectorSet element is as follows:

```
666
667 (1) <s:Envelope
668 (2)   xmlns:s="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope"
669 (3)   xmlns:wsa="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing"
670 (4)   xmlns:wsman="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman.xsd">
671 (5)   <s:Header>
672 (6)     ...
```

## Web Services for Management

```
673 (7) <wsa:To> service transport address </wsa:To>
674 (8) <wsman:ResourceURI> ResourceURI </wsman:ResourceURI>
675 (9) <wsman:SelectorSet> ?
676 (10) <wsman:Selector Name="name"> value </wsman:Selector> +
677 (11) </wsman:SelectorSet>
678 (12) ...
679 (13) </s:Header>
680 (14) ...
```

681 The following describes additional, normative constraints on the outline listed above:

682 **wsa:To**

683 Network address and ResourceURI suffix

684 **wsman:SelectorSet**

685 The wrapper for one or more Selector elements required to reference the instance.

686 **wsman:SelectorSet/wsman:Selector**

687 Used to describe the Selector and its value. If more than one Selector is required, then there is one  
688 Selector element for each part of the overall Selector. The value of this element is the Selector  
689 value.

690 **wsman:SelectorSet/wsman:Selector/@Name**

691 The name of the Selector (to be treated in a case-insensitive manner).

692 The value of a Selector may be a nested endpoint reference. In the example below, the Selector on line  
693 23 is a part of a SelectorSet consisting of nested EPR (lines 24-32) with its own Address+ResourceURI  
694 and SelectorSet elements:

```
695 (15) <s:Envelope
696 (16)   xmlns:s="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope"
697 (17)   xmlns:wsa="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing"
698 (18)   xmlns:wsman="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman.xsd">
700 (19) <s:Header>
701 (20)   ...
702 (21) <wsman:SelectorSet>
703 (22)   <wsman:Selector Name="Primary"> 123 </wsman:Selector>
704 (23)   <wsman:Selector Name="EPR">
705 (24)     <wsa:EndpointReference>
706 (25)       <wsa:Address> address </wsa:Address>
707 (26)       <wsa:ReferenceParameters>
708 (27)         <wsman:ResourceURI> resource URI </wsman:ResourceURI>
709 (28)         <wsman:SelectorSet>
710 (29)           <wsman:Selector Name="name"> value </wsman:Selector>
711 (30)         </wsman:SelectorSet>
712 (31)       </wsa:ReferenceParameters>
713 (32)     </wsa:EndpointReference>
714 (33)   </wsman:Selector>
715 (34) </wsman:SelectorSet>
716 (35)   ...
717 (36)
```

718  
 719 **R2.1.2-5:** For those services using the WS-Management default addressing model, the value of a  
 720 wsman:Selector MUST be one of  
 721 (a) A simple type as defined in the XML schema namespace  
 722 <http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema>  
 723 (b) A nested wsa:EndpointReference using the WS-Management addressing model.  
 724 A service MAY fault Selector usage with wsman:InvalidSelectors if the Selector is not a simple type  
 725 or of a supported schema.  
 726  
 727 **R2.1.2-6:** A conformant service MAY reject any Selector or nested Selector with a nested endpoint  
 728 reference whose wsa:Address value is not the same as the primary wsa:To value or is not  
 729 <http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing/role/anonymous>.

730 The primary purpose for this nesting mechanism is to allow resources which can answer questions about  
 731 other resources.

732 WS-Management SelectorSet values may be used in conjunction with enumerations to specify a scope  
 733 on the enumeration.

734 In some cases, the wsman:ResourceURI refers to a domain or class of items, and the wsman:Selector  
 735 values act as a scoping mechanism. For example, the ResourceURI may be used to enumerate  
 736 "Principals", and an additional "Selector" might scope the enumeration to a specific Kerberos realm,  
 737 allowing only "Principals" within the specified Realm to be the enumerable set before any filters are  
 738 applied.

739 Selectors may be used as a type of filtering mechanism per se without using a filter dialect. This is  
 740 permitted as long as the logical restriction of Selector values is observed: They are simple tests for  
 741 equality and if more than one selector is present, they are logically ANDed.

742 For instance consider the following examples for receiving a subset of items in an enumeration sequence,  
 743 the XPath

744  
 745 (1) `. [BackupDrive='true']`

746 ...and the following SelectorSet would provide the same enumeration result set:

747  
 748 (2) `<wsman:SelectorSet>`  
 749 (3) `<wsman:Selector Name="BackupDrive">true</wsman:Selector>`  
 750 (4) `</wsman:SelectorSet>`

751 In the first case, the XPath filters out all drives which are not "backup drives", and in the second case, the  
 752 "Selector" forces "BackupDrive" to be "true" as part of the selection criteria.

753 XPath and other filter dialects are typically much more powerful than using the wsman:SelectorSet for  
 754 filtering, but resource-constrained implementations may be able to benefit from using this simple  
 755 mechanism, since it requires no filter language processor and uses SOAP processing which is already  
 756 present for other WS-Management operations.

757  
 758 **R2.1.2-7:** A service MAY support the wsman:SelectorSet element and wsman:Selector values to  
 759 scope the events emitted by an event source, either alone or in conjunction with a wsman:Filter  
 760 element.

## Web Services for Management

761 In some cases, the wsman:ResourceURI refers to a domain or class of items, and the wsman:Selector  
762 values can act as a scoping mechanism. For example, the ResourceURI may be used to provide all  
763 "hardware failure" events, and the "Selector" may scope this to "Storage" devices or "Display" devices.

764 This suggests that Selectors may be used as a type of filtering mechanism per se without using a filter  
765 dialect. This is permitted as long as the logical restriction of Selector values is observed: They are  
766 simple tests for equality and if more than one selector is present, they are logically ANDed.

767 XPath and other filter dialects are typically much more powerful than using the wsman:SelectorSet for  
768 filtering, but resource-constrained implementations may be able to benefit from using this simple  
769 mechanism, since it requires no filter language processor and uses SOAP processing which is already  
770 present for other WS-Management operations.

771

772 **R2.1.2-8:** A service MAY fail to process a Selector of more than 2048 characters.

773

774 **R2.1.2-9:** A service MAY fail to process a Selector value of more than 4096 characters, including  
775 any embedded Selectors, and MAY fail to process a message which contains more than 8096  
776 characters of content in the root <SelectorSet> element.

### 777 **2.1.3 Faults for Default Addressing Format**

778 Whenever faults based on the default format are generated, they often will contain specific fault detail  
779 codes. These are clearly called out separately in the master fault table in 11.6 and do not apply when  
780 service-specific addressing is in use.

### 781 **2.1.4 Service-Specific Endpoint References**

782 Although WS-Management specifies a default addressing model, there are cases where this model is not  
783 available or appropriate.

784

785 **R2.1.4-1:** A conformant service MAY not understand the header values used by the WS-  
786 Management default endpoint reference format. Since the wsman:ResourceURI should be marked  
787 *mustUnderstand="true"* by the client, the service MUST return an s:NotUnderstood fault.

788

789 **R2.1.4-2:** A conformant service MAY require additional header values to be present which are  
790 beyond the scope of this specification.

791 Services may thus use alternative EPR formats for addressing resources with WS-Management. These  
792 formats may or may not use ResourceURI or SelectorSet, and still be valid addressing models providing  
793 they conform to the rules of WS-Addressing.

794 In addition to a defined alternative format, a service may not explicitly define any format at all and may  
795 use an opaque EPR generated at runtime, which is to be handled according to the standard rules of WS-  
796 Addressing.

797 When such addressing models are in use, the client application will have to understand and interoperate  
798 with discovery methods for acquiring these endpoint references that are beyond the scope of this  
799 specification.

800

## 801 **2.2 Other WS-Addressing Headers**

802 The following additional addressing-related header blocks occur in WS-Management messages.

803 **R2.2-1:** A conformant service MUST recognize and process the following WS-  
 804 Addressing header blocks. Any others are optional as specified in WS-  
 805 Addressing and MAY be present, but a conformant service MAY reject any  
 806 additional headers and fail to process the message, issuing a  
 807 s:NotUnderstood fault.

- 808 • **wsa:ReplyTo** (required when a response is expected)
- 809 • **wsa:FaultTo** (optional)
- 810 • **wsa:MessageID** (required)
- 811 • **wsa:Action** (required)
- 812 • **wsa:RelatesTo** (required in responses)

813 The usage of these header blocks is discussed in subsequent sections.

### 814 **2.3 mustUnderstand Usage**

815 The SOAP `mustUnderstand` attribute for SOAP headers is to be interpreted as a "must comply"  
 816 instruction in WS-Management. For example, if a SOAP header which is listed as being OPTIONAL in  
 817 this specification is tagged with `mustUnderstand="true"`, the service is required to comply or return a fault.  
 818 To ensure the service treats a header as optional, the `mustUnderstand` attribute should be omitted.

819 Obviously, if the service cannot understand the primary endpoint reference of the resource (the  
 820 ResourceURI), it will not be able to service the request in any case. Similarly, if the `wsa:Action` is not  
 821 understood, the implementation will not know how to process the message. So, for the following  
 822 elements, the omission or inclusion of `mustUnderstand="true"` has no real effect on the message in  
 823 practice, as `mustUnderstand` is implied:

- 824 • `wsa:To`
- 825 • `wsa:MessageID`
- 826 • `wsa:RelatesTo`
- 827 • `wsa:Action`

828

829 **R2.3-1:** A conformant service MUST process any of the above elements identically  
 830 whether `mustUnderstand="true"` is present or not.

831 As a corollary, clients may omit `mustUnderstand="true"` from any of the above elements with no change in  
 832 meaning. Obviously, the client may safely always include `mustUnderstand="true"` on any of the above  
 833 elements.

834

835 **R2.3-2:** If a service cannot comply with a header marked with  
 836 `mustUnderstand="true"`, it MUST issue a s:NotUnderstood fault.

837 The goal is that the service should be tolerant of inconsistent `mustUnderstand` usage by clients when  
 838 there is no real chance of the request being misinterpreted.

839 It is important that clients using the WS-Management default addressing format (ResourceURI and  
 840 SelectorSet) use `mustUnderstand="true"` on the `wsman:ResourceURI` element to ensure that the service  
 841 is compliant with that addressing format. Implementations which make use of service-specific endpoint  
 842 reference formats will otherwise potentially ignore these header values and behave inconsistently with the  
 843 intentions of the client.

## Web Services for Management

844

### 845 **2.4 wsa:To**

846 In request messages, the wsa:To address contains the network address of the service. In some cases,  
847 this is sufficient to locate the resource. In other cases, the service is a dispatching agent for multiple  
848 resources. In these cases the endpoint reference will typically contain additional fields (reference  
849 parameters) to allow the service to identify a resource within its scope.

850 Note that WS-Management does not preclude multiple listener services from coexisting on the same  
851 physical system. Such services would be discovered and distinguished using mechanisms beyond the  
852 scope of this specification.

853 For example, when the default address format is in use, these additional fields are the ResourceURI and  
854 SelectorSet fields.

855

856 **R2.4-1:** The wsa:To header **MUST** be present in all messages, whether requests, responses, or  
857 events, and **SHOULD** reflect a valid URI. In the absence of other requirements, it is  
858 **RECOMMENDED** that the network address be suffixed by the token sequence **/wsman**:  
859

```
860 (1) <wsa:To> http://123.15.166.67/wsman </wsa:To>
```

861 If the service only exposes one set of resources, then the wsa:To is the only addressing element  
862 required.

863 Including the network transport address in the SOAP message may seem redundant, since the network  
864 connection would already have to be established by the client, but in cases where the message is routed  
865 through intermediaries, this would obviously be required so that the intermediary could examine the  
866 message and make the final connection to the actual endpoint.

867 The wsa:To may encompass any number of tokens required to locate the service and a group of  
868 resources within that service.

869 Note that wsa:To must be present in *all* messages, including replies and faults, even though it appears  
870 redundant for many transports.

871 Note that all secondary messages which are continuations of prior messages, such as wsen:Pull or  
872 wsen:Release (both of which continue wsen:Enumerate) must still contain an endpoint reference. The  
873 fact that these messages also contain context information from a prior message is not material to the  
874 SOAP messaging and addressing model.

875

876 **R2.4-2:** The service **SHOULD** issue faults when failing to evaluate the address of the resource in the  
877 following situations:

- 878 • If the resource is offline, a wsa:EndpointUnavailable fault is returned with a detail code  
879 of http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/ResourceOffline
- 880 • If the resource cannot be located ("not found"), a wsa:DestinationUnreachable fault is  
881 returned.
- 882 • If the resource is valid, but internal errors occur, a wsman:InternalError fault is  
883 returned.
- 884 • If the resource cannot be accessed for security reasons, a wsman:AccessDenied fault  
885 is returned.

886

887

888 **2.5 wsa:ReplyTo**

889 WS-Management requires the following usage of wsa:ReplyTo in addressing:

890 **R2.5-1:** A wsa:ReplyTo header MUST be present in all request messages when a  
 891 reply is required. This MUST either be a valid address for a new  
 892 connection using any transport supported by the service, or the URI  
 893 **http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing/role/anonymous**  
 894 (see WS-Addressing), which indicates that the reply is to be delivered over  
 895 the same connection on which the request arrived. If the wsa:ReplyTo is  
 896 missing, a wsa:MessageInformationHeaderRequired fault is returned.

897 Note that some messages, such as event deliveries, wse:SubscriptionEnd, etc., do not require a  
 898 response and may omit a wsa:ReplyTo element.

899 **R2.5-2:** A conformant service MAY require that all responses be delivered over the  
 900 same connection on which the request arrives. In this case, the URI  
 901 discussed in R2.5-1 MUST indicate this. Otherwise, the service MUST  
 902 return a wsman:UnsupportedFeature fault with a detail code of  
 903 http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/AddressingMod  
 904 e.

905 **R2.5-3:** When delivering events for which acknowledgement of delivery is required,  
 906 the sender of the event MUST include a wsa:ReplyTo element, and  
 907 observe the usage in section 7.8 of this specification.

908 **R2.5-4:** The service MUST fully duplicate the entire wsa:Address of the  
 909 wsa:ReplyTo element in the wsa:To of the reply, even if some of the  
 910 information is not understood by the service.

911 This is used in cases where the client includes suffixes on the HTTP or HTTPS address that the service  
 912 does not understand. The service must return these suffixes nonetheless.

913 **R2.5-5:** Any reference parameters supplied in the wsa:ReplyTo address MUST be  
 914 included in the actual response message as top-level headers as specified  
 915 in WS-Addressing unless the response is a fault. If the response is a fault,  
 916 then the service SHOULD include the reference parameters but MAY omit  
 917 these values if the resulting message size would exceed encoding limits.

918 WS-Addressing allows clients to include client-defined reference parameters in ReplyTo headers. The  
 919 WS-Addressing specification requires that these be extracted from requests and placed in the responses  
 920 by removing the ReferenceParameters wrapper, and placing all of the values as top-level SOAP headers  
 921 in the response as discussed in section 2.1. This allows clients to better correlate responses with the  
 922 original requests. This step cannot be omitted. In the example below, the "user-defined content" must be  
 923 included in the reply message:

924

```

925 (1) <s:Envelope
926 (2)   xmlns:s="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope"
927 (3)   xmlns:wsa="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing"
928 (4)   xmlns:wsman="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman.xsd">
929 (5)   <s:Header>
930 (6)     ...
931 (7)     <wsa:To> http://1.2.3.4/wsman </wsa:To>
932 (8)     <wsa:ReplyTo>
```

## Web Services for Management

```
933 (9)      <wsa:Address>
934 (10)     http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing/role/anonymous
935 (11)    </wsa:Address>
936 (12)    <wsa:ReferenceParameters>
937 (13)     user-defined content
938 (14)    </wsa:ReferenceParameters>
939 (15) </wsa:ReplyTo>
940 (16) ...
```

941 **R2.5-6:** If the wsa:ReplyTo address is not usable or is missing, the service should  
942 not reply to the request, as it has no way to reply properly, and it should  
943 close or terminate the connection according to the rules of the current  
944 network transport. In these cases, the service SHOULD locally log some  
945 type of entry to help locate the client defect later.

### 946 2.6 wsa:FaultTo

947 **R2.6-1:** A conformant service is NOT REQUIRED to support a wsa:FaultTo address  
948 which is distinct from the WS-Addressing:ReplyTo address. If such a  
949 request is made and is not supported by the service, a  
950 wsman:UnsupportedFeature fault MUST be returned with a detail code of  
951 http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/AddressingMod  
952 e.

953 If a wsa:ReplyTo is omitted from a request (a gross error), then transport-level mechanisms are typically  
954 used to fail the request, since where to send the fault is uncertain. It is not an error for the service to  
955 simply shut down the connection in this case.

956 **R2.6-2:** If wsa:FaultTo is omitted, the service MUST return the fault to the  
957 wsa:ReplyTo address if a fault occurs.

958 **R2.6-3:** A conformant service MAY require that all faults be delivered to the client  
959 over the same transport or connection on which the request arrives. In this  
960 case, the URI MUST be  
961 **http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing/role/anonymous**  
962 (see WS-Addressing). If services do not support separately-addressed  
963 fault delivery and the wsa:FaultTo is any other address, a  
964 wsman:UnsupportedFeature fault MUST be returned with a detail code of  
965 http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/AddressingMod  
966 e.

967 Note that this specification does not restrict richer implementations from fully supporting wsa:FaultTo.

968 **R2.6-4:** Any reference parameters supplied in the wsa:FaultTo address SHOULD  
969 be included as top-level headers in the actual fault, as specified in WS-  
970 Addressing. In some cases, including this information would cause the  
971 fault to exceed encoding size limits, and thus MAY be omitted in those  
972 cases.

973 WS-Addressing allows clients to include client-defined reference parameters in wsa:FaultTo headers.  
974 The WS-Addressing specification requires that these be extracted from requests and placed in the faults  
975 by removing the ReferenceParameters wrapper, and placing all of the values as top-level SOAP headers  
976 in the fault. This allows clients to better correlate faults with the original requests. This step should not  
977 be omitted except in cases where the resulting fault would be large enough to exceed encoding limit  
978 restrictions elsewhere in this specification.

979 In the following example, the "user-defined content" MUST appear in the fault, if it occurs:

980

981

982

983

984

985

986

987

988

989

990

991

992

993

994

995

996

```
(1) <s:Envelope
(2)   xmlns:s="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope"
(3)   xmlns:wsa="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing"
(4)   xmlns:wsmn="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman.xsd">
(5)   <s:Header>
(6)     ...
(7)     <wsa:To> http://1.2.3.4/wsman </wsa:To>
(8)     <wsa:FaultTo>
(9)       <wsa:Address>
(10)        http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing/role/anonymous
(11)      </wsa:Address>
(12)      <wsa:ReferenceParameters>
(13)        user-defined content
(14)      </wsa:ReferenceParameters>
(15)    </wsa:FaultTo>
(16)  ...
```

997

998

999

1000

1001

1002

**R2.6-5:** If the wsa:FaultTo address is not usable, the service should not reply to the request, as it has no way to return the fault properly. Similarly, if no FaultTo address is supplied, and the service does not have sufficient information to fault the response properly, it should not reply and should close the network connection. In these cases, the service SHOULD locally log some type of entry to help locate the client defect later.

1003

1004

1005

**R2.6-6:** The service MUST properly duplicate the wsa:Address of the wsa:FaultTo element in the wsa:To of the reply, even if some of the information is not understood by the service.

1006

1007

1008

This occurs in cases where the client includes private content suffixes on the HTTP or HTTPS address that the service does not understand. The service should not remove this information when constructing the address.

1009

## 2.7 wsa:MessageID and wsa:RelatesTo

1010

1011

1012

1013

**R2.7-1:** The MessageID and RelatesTo URIs MAY be of any format, as long as they are valid URIs according to RFC 3986. Because URIs may differ only by case, two URIs with the same characters are considered different, regardless of what the URI represents.

1014

1015

The following two formats are endorsed by this specification. The first is considered a best-practice, as it is backed by IETF RFC 4122 [23]:

1016

1017

1018

1019

**urn:uuid:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxxx**  
or  
**uuid:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxxx**

1020

1021

1022

1023

1024

In the examples above, each x is an uppercase or lowercase hexadecimal digit (lowercase required by RFC 4122); there are no spaces or other tokens. It is NOT REQUIRED that this format be used or that it formally be a DCE-style GUID with provable uniqueness properties, although this is typical.

1025

Regardless of format, the URI may not exceed the maximum defined in

## Web Services for Management

1026 R10.6-1.

1027 Because GUIDs have a numeric meaning as well as a string meaning, this can lead to confusion. The  
1028 same GUID in lowercase is a different URI than the same GUID in uppercase. This is because the value  
1029 is being implied rather than the URI representation, and WS-Management works with the URI value itself,  
1030 not the underlying value representation. Services are free to *interpret* the URI in any way, but must treat  
1031 the value as a URI and not as its underlying value, and may not alter the case usage when repeating the  
1032 message or any of the MessageID values in subsequent messages.

1033 Note that RFC 4122 requires the digits to be lowercase. This is the responsibility of the client, as the  
1034 service simply processes the values as URI values and is not required to analyze the URI for correctness  
1035 or compliance. Of course, the service must replicate the client usage in the RelatesTo reply, and may not  
1036 alter the case usage.

1037 **R2.7-2:** The MessageID SHOULD be generated according to any algorithm which  
1038 ensures that no two MessageIDs will repeat. Since the value is treated as  
1039 case-sensitive (R2.7-1), confusion can arise if the same value is reused  
1040 differing only in case, so the service MUST NOT create or employ  
1041 MessageID values which differ only in case. For any message transmitted  
1042 by the service, the MessageID MUST NOT be reused.

1043 The client must ensure that MessageID values are not reused in requests. While services and clients  
1044 should not issue different MessageIDs which differ only by case, the service is not required to detect this,  
1045 nor is it required to analyze the URI for syntactic correctness or repeated use.

1046 **R2.7-3:** The RelatesTo MUST be present in all response messages and faults,  
1047 MUST contain the MessageID of the associated request message, and  
1048 MUST match the original in case, being treated as a URI value and not as a  
1049 binary GUID value.

1050 **R2.7-4:** If the MessageID is not parsable or is missing, a  
1051 wsa:InvalidMessageInformationHeader fault SHOULD be returned.

1052 Examples:

```
1053
1054 <wsa:MessageID>
1055     uuid:d9726315-bc91-430b-9ed8-ce5ffb858a91
1056 </wsa:MessageID>
1057
1058 <wsa:MessageID>
1059     anotherScheme:ID/12310/1231/16607/25
1060 </wsa:MessageID>
1061
```

1062 Note that mustUnderstand can be omitted for either wsa:MessageID or wsa:RelatesTo with no change in  
1063 meaning.

1064

## 1065 2.8 wsa:Action

1066 The wsa:Action URI indicates the "method" being invoked against the resource.

1067 **R2.8-1:** The wsa:Action URI MUST NOT be used to identify the specific resource  
1068 class or instance, but only to identify the operation to use against that  
1069 resource.

1070 **R2.8-2:** For all resource endpoints, a service MUST return a  
 1071 `wsa:ActionNotSupported` fault (defined in WS-Addressing) if a requested  
 1072 action is not supported by the service for the specified resource.

1073 In other words, to model the "Get" of item "Disk", the `wsa:Action` URI is what will contain the "Get". The  
 1074 `wsa:To`, and potentially other SOAP headers, will indicate *what* is being accessed. When the default  
 1075 addressing format is used, for example, the `ResourceURI` will typically contain the reference to the "Disk"  
 1076 and the `SelectorSet` identify which disk. Other service-specific addressing formats may factor the identity  
 1077 of the resource in different ways.

1078 Implementations are free to support additional custom methods which combine the notion of "Get" and  
 1079 "Disk into a single "GetDisk" action, as long as they strive to support the separated form to maximize  
 1080 interoperation. One of the main points behind WS-Management is to unify common methods wherever  
 1081 possible.

1082 **R2.8-3:** If a service exposes any of the following types of capabilities, a conformant  
 1083 service MUST at least expose that capability using the definitions in the  
 1084 following table according to the rules of this specification. The service MAY  
 1085 OPTIONALLY expose additional similar functionality using a distinct  
 1086 `wsa:Action` URI.  
 1087

Action URI	Description
<code>http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/transfer/Get</code>	Models any simple single item retrieval
<code>http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/transfer/GetResponse</code>	Response to the above "Get"
<code>http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/transfer/Put</code>	Models an update of an entire item
<code>http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/transfer/PutResponse</code>	Response to "Put"
<code>http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/transfer/Create</code>	Models creation of a new item
<code>http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/transfer/CreateResponse</code>	Response to "Create"
<code>http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/transfer/Delete</code>	Models the deletion of an item
<code>http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/transfer/DeleteResponse</code>	Response to "Delete"
<code>http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/enumeration/Enumerate</code>	Begins an enumeration or query
<code>http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/enumeration/EnumerateResponse</code>	Response to above "Enumerate"
<code>http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/enumeration/Pull</code>	Retrieves the next batch of results from enumeration
<code>http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/enumeration/PullResponse</code>	Response to the above "Pull"
<code>http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/enumeration/Renew</code>	Renews an enumerator which may have timed out (not required in WS-Management)
<code>http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/enumeration/RenewResponse</code>	Response to the "Renew" (not required in WS-Management)
<code>http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/enumeration/GetStatus</code>	Gets the status of the enumerator (not required in WS-Management)
<code>http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/enumeration/GetStatusResponse</code>	Response to the "GetStatus"

## Web Services for Management

	request (not required in WS- Management)
<a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/enumeration/Release">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/enumeration/Release</a>	Releases an active enumerator
<a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/enumeration/ReleaseResponse">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/enumeration/ReleaseResponse</a>	Response to the above "Release"
<a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/enumeration/EnumerationEnd">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/enumeration/EnumerationEnd</a>	Notifies that an enumerator has terminated (not required in WS- Management)
<a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/Subscribe">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/Subscribe</a>	Models a subscription to an event source
<a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/SubscribeResponse">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/SubscribeResponse</a>	Response to the above "Subscribe"
<a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/Renew">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/Renew</a>	Renews a subscription prior to its expiration
<a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/RenewResponse">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/RenewResponse</a>	Response to the "Renew" request
<a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/GetStatus">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/GetStatus</a>	Requests the status of a subscription
<a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/GetStatusResponse">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/GetStatusResponse</a>	Response to the "GetStatus" message
<a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/Unsubscribe">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/Unsubscribe</a>	Removes an active subscription
<a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/UnsubscribeResponse">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/UnsubscribeResponse</a>	Response to the "Unsubscribe" operation
<a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/SubscriptionEnd">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/SubscriptionEnd</a>	Delivers a message to indicate that a subscription has terminated
<a href="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/Events">http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/Events</a>	Delivers batched events based on a subscription
<a href="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/Heartbeat">http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/Heartbeat</a>	A pseudo-event that models a heartbeat of an active subscription. Delivered when no real events are available, but used to indicate that the event subscription and delivery mechanism is still active.
<a href="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/DroppedEvents">http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/DroppedEvents</a>	A pseudo-event which indicates that the real event was dropped.
<a href="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/Ack">http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/Ack</a>	Used by event subscribers to acknowledge receipt of events. Allows event streams to be strictly sequenced.
<a href="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/Event">http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/Event</a>	Used for a singleton event which does not define its own action.

1088  
1089

**R2.8-4:** A custom action MAY BE supported if the operation is a custom method whose semantic meaning is not present in the table, or if the item is an

1090 event.

1091 **R2.8-5:** All event deliveries **MUST** contain a unique action URI which identifies the  
 1092 type of the event delivery. For singleton deliveries with only one event per  
 1093 message (the delivery mode  
 1094 <http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/DeliveryModes/Push>), the  
 1095 `wsa:Action` URI defines the event type. For other delivery modes, the  
 1096 Action varies, as described in section 6 of this specification.

## 1097 **2.9 wsa:From**

1098 The `wsa:From` header can be used in any messages, responses, or events to indicate the source. When  
 1099 the same connection is used for both request and reply, this field provides no useful information in  
 1100 practice, but can be useful in cases where the response arrives on a different connection.

1101 **R2.9-1:** A conformant service **MAY** include a `wsa:From` address in the message,  
 1102 but is **NOT REQUIRED** to do so. A conformant service **SHOULD** process  
 1103 any incoming message which has a `wsa:From` element.

1104 **R2.9-2:** A conformant service **SHOULD NOT** fault any message with a `wsa:From`  
 1105 element, whether or not `mustUnderstand` is included.

1106 Note that processing the `wsa:From` message is trivial since it has no effect on the meaning of the  
 1107 message. The *From* address is primarily for auditing and logging purposes. This may occur in a  
 1108 message of any type, whether a request, reply, singleton message, or event.

## 1109 **3 WS-Management Control Headers**

### 1110 **3.1 Operation Timeout**

1111 Most management operations are time-critical due to quality-of-service constraints and obligations. If they  
 1112 cannot be completed in a specified time, the service must return a fault so that a client can comply with its  
 1113 obligations.

1114 The following header value may be supplied with any WS-Management message to indicate that the  
 1115 client expects a response or a fault within the specified time:

```
1116 <wsman:OperationTimeout> xs:duration </wsman:OperationTimeout>
```

1117 **R3.1-1:** All request messages **MAY** contain a `wsman:OperationTimeout` header  
 1118 element that indicates the maximum amount of time the client is willing to  
 1119 wait for the service to issue a response. The service **SHOULD** interpret  
 1120 the timeout countdown as beginning from the point the message is  
 1121 processed until a response can be generated.

1122 **R3.1-2:** The service **SHOULD** *immediately* issue a `wsman:TimedOut` fault if the  
 1123 countdown time is exceeded and the operation is not yet complete. If the  
 1124 `OperationTimeout` value is not valid, then a `wsman:InvalidHeader` fault  
 1125 **SHOULD** be generated with a detail code of  
 1126 <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InvalidTimeout>.

1127 **R3.1-3:** If the service does not support user-defined timeouts, a  
 1128 `wsman:UnsupportedFeature` fault **SHOULD** be returned with a detail code  
 1129 of  
 1130 [http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/OperationTimeo](http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/OperationTimeout)  
 1131 [ut](http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/OperationTimeout).

## Web Services for Management

1132 **R3.1-4:** If the wsman:OperationTimeout is omitted, the service MAY interpret this as  
1133 an instruction to block indefinitely until a response is available, or MAY  
1134 impose a default timeout.

1135 These rules do not preclude services from supporting infinite or very long timeouts. Given that network  
1136 connections seldom will block indefinitely with no traffic occurring, some type of transport timeout is likely  
1137 in any case. Also note that the countdown is initiated from the time the message is received, so network  
1138 latency is not included. If a client needs to discover the range of valid timeouts or defaults, metadata  
1139 should be retrieved, but the format of such metadata is beyond the scope of this specification.

1140 If the timeout occurs in such a manner that the service has already performed some of the work  
1141 associated with the request, the service state reaches an anomalous condition. This specification does  
1142 not attempt to address behavior in this situation. Clearly, services should undo the effects of any partially  
1143 complete operations if possible, but this is not always practical. In such cases, the service should keep a  
1144 local log of requests and operations which the client can query later.

1145 **R3.1-5:** If mustUnderstand is applied to the wsman:OperationTimeout, then the  
1146 service MUST observe the requested value or return the fault specified in  
1147 R3.1-2. The service SHOULD attempt to complete the request within the  
1148 specified time or issue a fault without any further delay.

1149 Clients should always omit the mustUnderstand header for uniform behavior against all implementations.  
1150 It is not an error for a compliant service to ignore the timeout value or treat it as a hint if mustUnderstand  
1151 is omitted.

1152 An example of a correctly formatted 30-second timeout appears as follows in the SOAP header:

```
1153 <wsman:OperationTimeout>PT30S</wsman:OperationTimeout>
```

1154 If the transport timeout occurs before the actual wsman:OperationTimeout, the operation should be  
1155 treated as specified in section 10.4, the same as a failed connection. In practice, these should be  
1156 configured so that the network transport timeout is larger than any expected wsman:OperationTimeout.

1157 This specification establishes no requirement regarding the internal behavior of services regarding  
1158 incomplete operations if a timeout occurs. If a wxf:Delete operation is in progress and a timeout occurs,  
1159 the service decides whether to attempt a rollback or roll-forward of the deletion, even though it issues a  
1160 wsman:TimedOut fault. The service may elect to include additional information in the fault (see section  
1161 11.5) regarding its internal policy in this regard.

1162 The service should attempt to return to the state that existed before the operation was attempted, but this  
1163 is not always possible. It is expected that clients will attempt to discover what happened by doing  
1164 subsequent wxf:Get operations or by querying internal logs kept by the service.

### 1165 **3.2 Maximum Envelope Size**

1166 To prevent a response beyond the capability of the client, the request message may contain a restriction  
1167 on the response size.

1168 The following header value may be supplied with any WS-Management message to indicate that the  
1169 client expects a response whose total SOAP envelope body does not exceed the specified number of  
1170 octets:

```
1171 <wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize> xs:positiveInteger </wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize>
```

1172 The limitation is on the entire envelope, as resource-constrained implementations need a reliable figure  
1173 for the required amount of memory for all SOAP processing, not just the envelope Body, which leaves the  
1174 Header totally ambiguous.

1175 **R3.2-1:** All request messages MAY contain a wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize header

1176 element that indicates the maximum number of octets (not characters) in  
 1177 the entire SOAP envelope in the response. If the service cannot compose  
 1178 a reply within the requested size, a wsman:EncodingLimit fault SHOULD be  
 1179 returned with a detail code of  
 1180 http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/MaxEnvelopeSi  
 1181 ze.

1182 **R3.2-2:** If mustUnderstand is set to true, the service MUST comply with the request.  
 1183 If the response would exceed the maximum size, then a  
 1184 wsman:EncodingLimit fault SHOULD be returned. Since a service may  
 1185 execute the operation prior to knowing the response size, the service  
 1186 SHOULD undo any effects of the operation prior to issuing the fault. If the  
 1187 operation cannot be reversed (such as a destructive wxf:Put or wxf>Delete,  
 1188 or a wxf>Create), the service MUST indicate that the operation succeeded  
 1189 in the wsman:EncodingLimit fault with a detail code of  
 1190 http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/UnreportableSu  
 1191 ccess.

1192 **R3.2-3:** If mustUnderstand is set to false, the service MAY ignore the header.

1193 **R3.2-4:** The service SHOULD reject any MaxEnvelopeSize value less than 8192  
 1194 octets. This number is the safe minimum in which faults can be reliably  
 1195 encoded for all character sets. If the requested size is less than this, the  
 1196 service SHOULD return a wsman:EncodingLimit fault with a detail code of  
 1197 http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/MinimumEnvelo  
 1198 peLimit.

1199 Note that if the service exceeds its own encoding limit (independently of what the client specifies), the  
 1200 fault is wsman:EncodingLimit with a detail code of  
 1201 http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/ServiceEnvelopeLimit.

1202 Note: The definition of the wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize element in the schema contains a Policy attribute  
 1203 since this element is used for other purposes. This specification does not define a meaning for the Policy  
 1204 attribute when the wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize element is used as a SOAP header. Clients should not add  
 1205 the attribute to the wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize element when it is used as a SOAP header.

1206 **R3.2-5:** Services SHOULD ignore the Policy attribute if it appears in the  
 1207 wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize element when used as a SOAP header.

1208

### 1209 3.3 Locale

1210 Management operations often span locales, and many items in responses can require translation.  
 1211 Typically, this applies to descriptive information intended for human readers which is sent back in the  
 1212 response. If the client requires such output to be translated into a specific language, it may employ the  
 1213 optional wsman:Locale header which makes use of the standard XML attribute xml:lang, as follows:  
 1214

```
1215 (1) <wsman:Locale xml:lang="xs:language" s:mustUnderstand="false" />
```

1216 **R3.3-1:** If mustUnderstand is omitted or set to false, the service SHOULD utilize  
 1217 this value when composing the response message and adjust any  
 1218 localizable values accordingly. This is the RECOMMENDED usage for  
 1219 most cases. The locale is treated as a "hint" in this case.

1220 **R3.3-2:** If mustUnderstand is set to true, then the service MUST ensure that the  
 1221 replies contain localized information where appropriate, or else the service  
 1222 must issue a wsman:UnsupportedFeature fault with a detail code of

## Web Services for Management

1223 `http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/Locale`. A  
1224 service MAY always fault if `wsman:Locale` contains `s:mustUnderstand`,  
1225 since it may not be able to ensure that the reply is localized.

1226 Some implementations delegate the request to another subsystem for processing, so the service cannot  
1227 be certain that the localization actually occurred.

1228 **R3.3-3:** The value of the `xml:lang` attribute in the `wsman:Locale` header must be a  
1229 valid RFC 3066 language code.

1230 **R3.3-4:** In any response, event, or singleton message, the service SHOULD include  
1231 the **xml:lang** attribute in the `s:Envelope` (or other elements) to signal to the  
1232 receiver that localized content appears in the body of the message. This  
1233 may be omitted if no descriptive content appears in the body. Including it is  
1234 not an error, even if no descriptive content occurs:  
1235

```
1236 (1) <s:Envelope  
1237 (2)   xml:lang="en-us"  
1238 (3)   xmlns:s="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope"  
1239 (4)   xmlns:wsa="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing"  
1240 (5)   xmlns:wsman="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman.xsd">  
1241 (6) <s:Header>  
1242 (7)   ...
```

1243 The `xml:lang` attribute may appear on any content in the message, although a simpler approach allows  
1244 the client always to check for the attribute in one place, the `s:Envelope` wrapper.

1245 **R3.3-5:** For operations which span multiple message sequences, the  
1246 `wsman:Locale` element is processed in the initial message only. It  
1247 SHOULD be ignored in subsequent messages, since the first message  
1248 establishes the required locale. The service MAY issue a fault if the  
1249 `wsman:Locale` is present in subsequent messages and the value is  
1250 different from that used in the initiating request.

1251 This applies primarily to `wsen:Enumerate` and `wsen:Pull` messages. The locale is clearly established  
1252 once during the initial `wsen:Enumerate` request, so changing the locale during the enumeration would  
1253 serve no purpose. The service ignores any `wsman:Locale` elements in subsequent `wsen:Pull` messages,  
1254 but the client should ensure that the value does not change between `wsen:Pull` requests. This uniformity  
1255 enables the client to construct messages more easily.

1256 It is recommended (as established in R3.3-1) that the `wsman:Locale` element never contain a  
1257 `mustUnderstand` attribute. In this way, the client will not receive faults in unexpected places.

### 1258 3.4 Options

1259 The `OptionSet` header is used to pass a set of switches to the service to modify or refine the nature of the  
1260 request. This facility is intended to help the service observe any context or side effects desired by the  
1261 client, but *not* to alter the output schema or modify the meaning of the addressing. Options are similar to  
1262 switches used in command-line shells in that they are service-specific, text-based extensions.

1263 **R3.4-1:** Any request message MAY contain a `wsman:OptionSet` header, which  
1264 wraps a set of optional switches or controls on the message. These help  
1265 the service compose the desired reply or observe the required side-effect.

1266 **R3.4-2:** The service SHOULD NOT send responses, unacknowledged events, or  
1267 singleton messages containing `wsman:OptionSet` headers unless it is  
1268 acting in the role of a client to another service. Those headers are intended

- 1269 for request messages alone to which a subsequent response is expected,  
1270 including acknowledged events.
- 1271 **R3.4-3:** If the **mustUnderstand** attribute is omitted from the OptionSet block, then  
1272 the service MAY ignore the entire wsman:OptionSet block. If it is present  
1273 and the service does not support wsman:OptionSet, the service MUST  
1274 return a s:NotUnderstood fault.
- 1275 Services must be able to process an OptionSet block if it is present, but they are not required to  
1276 understand or process individual options, as shown in R3.4-6. However, if mustComply is used on any  
1277 given Option, then mustUnderstand must be set to "true". This avoids the incongruity of allowing the  
1278 entire OptionSet block to be ignored while having mustComply on individual options.
- 1279 **R3.4-4:** Each resource class MAY observe its own set of options, and individual  
1280 instances of that resource class MAY further observe its own set of options.  
1281 There is no requirement to support consistent option usage across  
1282 resource class and instance boundaries. The metadata formats and  
1283 definitions of options are beyond the scope of this specification and may be  
1284 service-specific.
- 1285 **R3.4-5:** Any number of individual Option elements may appear under the  
1286 wsman:OptionSet wrapper. Option names MAY be repeated if appropriate.  
1287 The content MUST be a simple string (xs:string). This specification places  
1288 no restrictions on whether the names or values are to be treated in a case-  
1289 sensitive or case-insensitive manner. Case usage MUST be retained  
1290 because the OptionSet and its contents are propagated through SOAP  
1291 intermediaries.
- 1292 Interpretation of the option with regard to case sensitivity is up to the service and the definition of the  
1293 specific option. This is because the value must usually be passed through to real-world subsystems  
1294 which inconsistently expose case usage. Where interoperation is a concern, the client should omit both  
1295 mustUnderstand and mustComply.
- 1296 **R3.4-6:** Individual option values may be advisory or may be required by the client.  
1297 The service must observe and execute any option marked with the  
1298 MustComply attribute set to "true", or return a wsman:InvalidOptions fault  
1299 with a detail code of  
1300 <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/NotSupported>.  
1301 Any option not marked with this attribute (or if the attribute is set to "false")  
1302 is advisory to the service and MAY be ignored by the service. If any option  
1303 is marked with MustComply set to "true", then mustUnderstand MUST be  
1304 used on the entire wsman:OptionSet block.
- 1305 This capability is required when the service delegates interpretation and execution of the options to  
1306 another component. In many cases, the SOAP processor cannot know if the option was observed or not,  
1307 and can only pass it along to the next subsystem.
- 1308 **R3.4-7:** Options MAY optionally contain a Type attribute which indicates the data  
1309 type of the content of the Option element. A service MAY REQUIRE that  
1310 this attribute be present on any given Option, and that it be set to the  
1311 QName of a valid XML schema data type. Only the standard types  
1312 declared in the <http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema> namespace are  
1313 supported in this version of WS-Management.
- 1314 This may help some services distinguish numeric or date/time types from other string values.
- 1315 **R3.4-8:** Options SHOULD NOT be used as a replacement for the documented  
1316 parameterization technique for the message, but SHOULD only be used as

## Web Services for Management

1317 a modifier for it.

1318 Options are primarily used to establish context or otherwise instruct the service to perform side-band  
1319 operations while performing the operation, such as turning on logging or tracing.

1320 **R3.4-9:** The following faults SHOULD be returned by the service:

- 1321 • wsman:InvalidOptions with a detail code of  
1322 http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/NotSupported in cases  
1323 where Options are not supported.
- 1324 • wsman:InvalidOptions with a detail code of  
1325 http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InvalidName in cases  
1326 where one or more options names were not valid or not supported by the specific  
1327 resource.
- 1328 • wsman:InvalidOptions with a detail code of  
1329 http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InvalidValue in cases  
1330 where the value was not correct for the Option name.

1331 **R3.4-10:** For operations which span multiple message sequences, the  
1332 wsman:OptionSet element is processed in the initial message only. It  
1333 SHOULD be ignored in subsequent messages, since the first message  
1334 establishes the required set of options. The service MAY issue a fault if the  
1335 wsman:OptionSet is present in subsequent messages and the value is  
1336 different from that used in the initiating request, or the service MAY ignore  
1337 the values of wsman:OptionSet in such messages.

1338 This applies primarily to wsen:Enumerate and wsen:Pull messages. The set of options is clearly  
1339 established once during the initial wsen:Enumerate request, so changing the options during the  
1340 enumeration would constitute an error.

1341 Options are intended to help make operations more efficient or to preprocess output on behalf of the  
1342 client. For example, the options could indicate to the service that the returned values should be  
1343 recomputed and that cached values should not be used, or that any optional values in the reply may be  
1344 omitted. Alternately, the options could be used to indicate verbose output within the limits of the XML  
1345 schema associated with the reply.

1346 Option values should not contain XML, but are limited to xs:string values. If XML-based input is required,  
1347 then a custom operation (method) with its own wsa:Action is the correct model for the operation. These  
1348 rules are intended to ensure that no backdoor parameters over well-known message types are  
1349 introduced. For example, when issuing a wse:Subscribe request, the message already defines a  
1350 technique for passing an event filter to the service, so the options should not be used to circumvent this  
1351 and pass a filter using an alternate method.

1352 The following is an example of wsman:OptionSet:

```
1353  
1354 (1) <s:Envelope  
1355 (2)   xmlns:s="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope"  
1356 (3)   xmlns:wsa="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing"  
1357 (4)   xmlns:wsman="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman.xsd"  
1358 (5)   xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">  
1359 (6) <s:Header>  
1360 (7)   ...  
1361 (8)   <wsman:OptionSet s:mustUnderstand="true">  
1362 (9)     <wsman:Option Name="VerbosityLevel" Type="xs:int">  
1363 (10)      3
```

```

1364 (11)         </wsman:Option>
1365 (12)         <wsman:Option Name="LogAllRequests" MustComply ="true" />
1366 (13)         </wsman:OptionSet>
1367 (14)         ...
1368 (15)

```

1369 The following describes additional, normative constraints on the outline listed above:

1370 wsman:OptionSet

1371 Used to wrap individual option blocks. In this example, s:mustUnderstand is set to "true", indicating  
1372 that the overall block must be processed using the rules above and cannot be ignored.

1373 wsman:OptionSet/wsman:Option/@Name

1374 Identifies the option (an xs:string), which may be a simple name or a URI. This name is scoped to  
1375 the resource to which it applies. The name MAY be repeated in subsequent elements. The name  
1376 cannot be blank and should be a short non-colliding URI which is vendor-specific.

1377 wsman:OptionSet/wsman:Option/@MustComply

1378 If set to "true", the option must be observed, otherwise, it is advisory or a hint.

1379 wsman:OptionSet/wsman:Option/@Type

1380 Optional attribute. If present, this indicates the data type of the element content, which helps the  
1381 service to interpret the content. A service may require this to be present on any given option  
1382 element.

1383 wsman:OptionSet/wsman:Option

1384 The content of the option. This may be any simple string value. If the option value is empty, then it  
1385 should be interpreted as logical "true", and the option is "enabled". The following example enables  
1386 the "Verbose" option:

```
1387 <wsman:Option Name="Verbose"/>
```

1388 Options are logically false if they are not present in the message. All other cases require an explicit string  
1389 to indicate the option value. The reasoning for allowing the same option to repeat is to allow specification  
1390 of a list of options of the same name.

1391

### 1392 3.5 Returned EPR

1393 Some service operations including WS-Transfer "Put" are able to modify the resource representation in  
1394 such a way that the result of the update results in a logical identity change for the resource, such as the  
1395 "rename" of a document. In many cases, this will in turn alter the EPR of that resource once the  
1396 operation is completed, as EPRs are often dynamically derived from naming values within the resource  
1397 representation itself. This is a common occurrence in SOAP implementations which delegate operations  
1398 to underlying systems.

1399 In order to provide a means for the client to determine when this has happened, two SOAP headers as  
1400 defined to request and return the EPR of a resource instance.

1401 In any WS-Management request message, the following header may appear:

```
1402 (1) <wsman:RequestEPR .../>
```

1403  
1404 **R3.5-1:** A service receiving a message containing the wsman:RequestEPR header block SHOULD  
1405 return a response which contains a wsman:RequestedEPR header block. This block will contain the  
1406 most recent endpoint reference of the resource being accessed or a status code if it cannot. This

## Web Services for Management

1407 EPR will reflect any identity changes that may have occurred as a result of the current operation, as  
1408 set forth in the behavior below.

1409 The header block in the corresponding response message has the following format:

1410

1411

```
(1) <wsman:RequestedEPR ...>  
(2) [ <wsa:EndpointReference> wsa:EndpointReferenceType </wsa:EndpointReference> |  
(3) <wsman:EPRInvalid/> |  
(4) <wsman:EPRUnknown/> ]  
(5) </wsman:RequestedEPR>
```

1416 The following describes additional, normative constraints on the outline listed above:

1417 wsman:RequestedEPR/wsa:EndpointReference

1418 This element is one of a choice of three elements that can be returned as a child element of the  
1419 wsman:RequestedEPR element. The use of this choice indicates the service understood the request  
1420 to return the EPR of the resource and is including the EPR of the resource. The returned EPR is  
1421 calculated after all intentional or side-effects of the associated request message. Note that the EPR  
1422 may not have changed as a result of the operation, but the service is still obligated to return it.

1423 wsman:RequestedEPR/wsman:EPRInvalid

1424 This element is one of a choice of three elements that can be returned as a child element of the  
1425 wsman:RequestedEPR element. The use of this element (no value is required) indicates that the  
1426 service understands the request to return the EPR of the resource, but is unable to calculate a full  
1427 EPR. However, the service is able to determine that this message exchange has modified the  
1428 resource representation in such a way that any previous references to the resource are no longer  
1429 valid. When EPRInvalid is returned, the client MUST NOT use the old wsa:EndpointReference in  
1430 subsequent operations.

1431 wsman:RequestedEPR/wsman:EPRUnknown

1432 This element is one of a choice of three elements that can be returned as a child element of the  
1433 wsman:RequestedEPR element. The use of this element (no value is required) indicates that the  
1434 service understands the request to return the EPR of the resource, but is unable to determine  
1435 whether existing references to the resource are still valid. When EPRUnknown is returned, the client  
1436 MAY use the old wsa:EndpointReference in subsequent operations. The result of using an old  
1437 wsa:EndpointReference is unpredictable; a result may be a fault or a successful response.

1438

## 1439 4 Resource Access

### 1440 4.1 Introduction

1441 Resource access applies to all synchronous operations regarding getting, setting, and enumerating  
1442 values. The WS-Transfer specification is used as a basis for simple unary resource access: Get, Put,  
1443 Delete, and Create. Multi-instance retrieval is achieved using WS-Enumeration messages. This  
1444 specification does not define any messages or techniques for batched operations, such as batched Get or  
1445 Delete. All such operations must be sent as a series of single messages.

### 1446 4.2 WS-Transfer

1447 WS-Transfer brings wxf:Get, wxf:Put, wxf:Create and wxf>Delete into the WS-Management space.

1448 Following is a full example of a hypothetical wxf:Get request and associated response:

1449

1450

1451

1452

1453

1454

1455

1456

1457

1458

1459

1460

1461

1462

1463

1464

1465

1466

1467

1468

1469

1470

1471

1472

1473

1474

1475

1476

1477

1478

```

X <s:Envelope
X   xmlns:s="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope"
X   xmlns:wsa="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing"
X   xmlns:wsmn="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman.xsd">
X   <s:Header>
X     <wsa:To>
X       http://1.2.3.4/wsman/
X     </wsa:To>
X     <wsman:ResourceURI>http://samples.org/2005/02/physicalDisk</wsman:ResourceURI>
X     <wsa:ReplyTo>
X       <wsa:Address>
X         http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing/role/anonymous
X       </wsa:Address>
X     </wsa:ReplyTo>
X     <wsa:Action>
X       http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/transfer/Get
X     </wsa:Action>
X     <wsa:MessageID>
X       uuid:d9726315-bc91-430b-9ed8-ce5ffb858a87
X     </wsa:MessageID>
X     <wsman:SelectorSet>
X       <wsman:Selector Name="LUN"> 2 </wsman:Selector>
X     </wsman:SelectorSet>
X     <wsman:OperationTimeout> PT30S </wsman:OperationTimeout>
X   </s:Header>
X   <s:Body/>
X </s:Envelope>

```

1479 Note that the wsa:ReplyTo occurs on the same connection as the request (line 8), the action is a wxf:Get  
 1480 (line 12), and the ResourceURI (line 8) and wsman:SelectorSet (line 21) are used to address the  
 1481 requested management information. This example assumes that the WS-Management default  
 1482 addressing format is in use. The service should expect to complete the operation in 30 seconds or return  
 1483 a fault to the client (line 24).

1484 Also note that the s:Body has no content in a wxf:Get request.

1485 A hypothetical response could be:

1486

1487

1488

1489

1490

1491

1492

1493

1494

1495

```

X <s:Envelope
X   xmlns:s="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope"
X   xmlns:wsa="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing"
X   xmlns:wsmn="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman.xsd">
X   <s:Header>
X     <wsa:To>
X       http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing/role/anonymous
X     </wsa:To>
X     <wsa:Action s:mustUnderstand="true">

```

## Web Services for Management

```
1496      http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/transfer/GetResponse
1497    </wsa:Action>
1498    <wsa:MessageID s:mustUnderstand="true">
1499      uuid:d9726315-bc91-430b-9ed8-ce5ffb858a88
1500    </wsa:MessageID>
1501    <wsa:RelatesTo>
1502      uuid:d9726315-bc91-430b-9ed8-ce5ffb858a87
1503    </wsa:RelatesTo>
1504  </s:Header>
1505  <s:Body>
1506    <PhysicalDisk xmlns="http://schemas.acme.com/2005/02/samples/physDisk">
1507      <Manufacturer> Acme, Inc. </Manufacturer>
1508      <Model> 123-SCSI 42 GB Drive </Model>
1509      <LUN> 2 </LUN>
1510      <Cylinders> 16384 </Cylinders>
1511      <Heads> 80 </Heads>
1512      <Sectors> 63 </Sectors>
1513      <OctetsPerSector> 512 </OctetsPerSector>
1514      <BootPartition> 0 </BootPartition>
1515    </PhysicalDisk>
1516  </s:Body>
1517 </s:Envelope>
```

1518 Note that the response uses the `wsa:To` address (line 35) that the original request had specified in  
1519 `wsa:ReplyTo`. Also, the `wsa:MessageID` for this response is unique (line 40). The `wsa:RelatesTo` (line 43)  
1520 contains the `uuid` of the `wsa:MessageID` of the original request to allow the client to correlate the  
1521 response.

1522 The Body (lines 48-59) contains the requested resource representation.

1523 The same general approach exists for `wxf:Delete`, except that no response occurs in the `s:Body`. The  
1524 `wxf:Create` and `wxf:Put` operations are similar, except that there is an `s:Body` on input to specify the  
1525 values being created or updated.

### 1526 4.3 Addressing Uniformity

1527 In general, the service should expose addressing usage which is identical for the operations. Wherever  
1528 practical, the endpoint reference of the resource should be the same whether a `wxf:Get`, `wxf:Delete`,  
1529 `wxf:Put`, or `wxf:Create` is being used. This is not a strict requirement, but reduces the education and  
1530 training required to construct and use WS-Management-aware tools

1531 It is clear that `wxf:Create` is a special case, in that the endpoint reference of the newly created resource is  
1532 often not known until the resource is actually created. For example, while it may be possible to return  
1533 running process information using a hypothetical *ProcessID* in an addressing header, it is typically not  
1534 possible to assert the *ProcessID* during the creation phase because the underlying system does not  
1535 support the concept. Thus, the `wxf:Create` would not have the same addressing headers as the  
1536 corresponding `wxf:Get` or `wxf:Delete` (which would presumably terminate the process).

1537 If the default addressing model is in use, it would be typical to use the `ResourceURI` as a "type" and  
1538 `Selector` values for "instance" identification. Thus, the same address would be used for `wxf:Get`, `wxf:Put`,  
1539 and `wxf:Delete` when working with the same instance. When enumerating all instances, the `Selectors`  
1540 would be omitted and the `ResourceURI` would be used alone to indicate the "type" of the object being  
1541 enumerated. The `wxf:Create` operation might also share this usage, or have its own `ResourceURI` and  
1542 `Selector` usage (or not even use `Selectors`). This pattern is not a requirement

1543 Throughout, it must be remembered that the s:Body of the messages must contain XML with correct and  
1544 valid XML namespaces referring to XML Schemas which can validate the message. While most services  
1545 and clients will not do real-time validation of messages in production environments due to performance  
1546 constraints, during debugging or other systems verification, validation may be enabled, and such  
1547 messages will be considered invalid.

1548 When performing WS-Transfer operations, side effects may occur. For example, deletion of a particular  
1549 resource via wxf:Delete may result in several other dependent instances disappearing, and wxf:Create  
1550 may result in the logical creation of more than one resource which can be subsequently returned via a  
1551 wxf:Get. Similarly, a wxf:Put may result in a rename of the target instance, a rename of some unrelated  
1552 instance, or the deletion of some unrelated instance. These side-effects are service-specific and this  
1553 specification makes no statements about the taxonomy and semantics of objects over which these  
1554 operations apply.

1555

#### 1556 **4.4 WS-Transfer:Get**

1557 The wxf:Get operation retrieves resource representations. The message may be targeted to return a  
1558 complex XML Infoset (an "object"), or to return a single, simple value. The nature and complexity of the  
1559 representation is not constrained by this specification.

1560 **R4.4-1:** A conformant service SHOULD support wxf:Get to service metadata  
1561 requests about the service itself or to verify the result of a previous action  
1562 or operation.

1563 This statement does not constrain implementations from supplying additional similar methods for  
1564 resource and metadata retrieval.

1565 **R4.4-2:** Execution of the wxf:Get SHOULD NOT in itself have side-effects on the  
1566 value of the resource.

1567 **R4.4-3:** If an object cannot be retrieved due to locking conditions, simultaneous  
1568 access, or similar conflicts, a wsman:Concurrency fault SHOULD be  
1569 returned.

1570 In practice, wxf:Get is designed to return fragments or chunks of XML which correspond to real-world  
1571 objects. To retrieve individual property values, the client must either postprocess the XML content for the  
1572 desired value, or the service can support Fragment-Level WS-Transfer (4.8).

1573 Fault usage is generally as described in chapters 2 and 3. Inability to locate or access the resource is  
1574 equivalent to problems with the SOAP message when the endpoint reference is defective. There are no  
1575 "get-specific" faults.

#### 1576 **4.5 WS-Transfer:Delete**

1577 The WS-Transfer:Delete operation deletes resource instances.

1578 In general, the addressing should be the same as for a corresponding wxf:Get for uniformity, but this is  
1579 not absolutely required.

1580 **R4.5-1:** A conformant service is NOT REQUIRED to support wxf:Delete.

1581 **R4.5-2:** A conformant service SHOULD support wxf:Delete using the same  
1582 endpoint reference as a corresponding wxf:Get or other messages, but this  
1583 is NOT REQUIRED if the deletion mechanism for a resource is  
1584 semantically distinct.

## Web Services for Management

1585        **R4.5-3:** If deletion is supported and the corresponding resource can be retrieved  
1586        using wxf:Get, a conformant service SHOULD support deletion using  
1587        wxf>Delete. The service MAY additionally export a custom action for  
1588        deletion.

1589        **R4.5-4:** If an object cannot be deleted due to locking conditions, simultaneous  
1590        access, or similar conflicts, a wsman:Concurrency fault SHOULD be  
1591        returned.

1592        In practice, wxf>Delete removes the resource instance from the visibility of the service and is a *logical*  
1593        deletion.

1594        The operation may result in an actual deletion, such as removal of a row from a database table, or it may  
1595        simulate deletion by unbinding the representation from the real-world object. Deletion of a "printer" for  
1596        example does not result in literal annihilation of the printer, but simply removing it from the access scope  
1597        of the service, or "unbinding" it from naming tables. WS-Management makes no distinction between  
1598        literal deletions and logical deletions.

1599        To delete individual property values within an object which itself is not to be deleted, the client must either  
1600        do a wxf:Put with those properties removed, or the service can support Fragment-Level WS-Transfer  
1601        (section 4.8).

1602        Fault usage is generally as described in chapters 2 and 3. Inability to locate or access the resource is  
1603        equivalent to problems with the SOAP message when the endpoint reference is defective. There are no  
1604        "delete-specific" faults.

### 1605        **4.6    WS-Transfer:Create**

1606        The WS-Transfer:Create operation creates resources, and models a logical "constructor". In general, the  
1607        addressing is not the same as that used for wxf:Get or wxf>Delete in that the endpoint reference assigned  
1608        to a newly created instance for subsequent access is not necessarily part of the XML content used for  
1609        creating the resource. Since the endpoint reference may often be assigned by the service or one of its  
1610        underlying systems, the CreateResponse must contain the applicable endpoint reference of the newly  
1611        created instance.

1612        **R4.6-1:** A conformant service is NOT REQUIRED to support wxf:Create.

1613        **R4.6-2:** A conformant service is NOT REQUIRED to support wxf:Create using the  
1614        same endpoint reference as a corresponding wxf:Get, wxf:Put, or other  
1615        messages for that resource.

1616        **R4.6-3:** If a single resource can be created using a SOAP message and that  
1617        resource can be subsequently retrieved using wxf:Get, then a service  
1618        SHOULD support creation of the resource using wxf:Create. The service  
1619        MAY additionally export a custom method for instance creation.

1620        **R4.6-4:** If the supplied Body does not have the correct content for the resource to  
1621        be created, the service SHOULD return a wxf:InvalidRepresentation fault  
1622        and detail codes as follows:

- 1623        • <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InvalidValues> if one or  
1624        more values in the <Body> was not correct
- 1625        • <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/MissingValues> if one or  
1626        more values in the <Body> was missing
- 1627        • <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InvalidNamespace> if the  
1628        wrong XML schema namespace was used and is not recognized by the service

1629 **R4.6-5:** A service MUST not use wxf:Create to perform an update on an existing  
 1630 representation. The targeted object must not already exist, or else the  
 1631 service SHOULD return a wsman:AlreadyExists fault.

1632 Note that the message body for wxf:Create is not required to use the same schema as that returned with  
 1633 a wxf:Get for the resource. Often, the values required to create a resource are different from those  
 1634 retrieved using a wxf:Get or those used for updates with wxf:Put.

1635 WS-Transfer specifies that wxf:CreateResponse must contain the initial representation of the object.  
 1636 However, due to restrictions in WSDL 1.1 (and the upcoming WSDL 2.0 specification), a SOAP Body  
 1637 cannot actually be defined which contains juxtaposed elements at the top level.

1638 This specification places a restriction such that the only returned value is the wxf:ResourceCreated  
 1639 element, which contains the endpoint reference of the newly created resource.

1640 If a service needs to support creation of individual values within a representation (fragment-level creation,  
 1641 array insertion, etc.), then it should support Fragment-Level WS-Transfer (section 4.8).

1642 **R4.6-6:** The wxf:CreateResponse to a wxf:Create message MUST contain the new  
 1643 endpoint reference of the created resource in the wxf:ResourceCreated  
 1644 element.

1645 **R4.6-7:** The response MUST NOT contain the initial representation of the object, in  
 1646 spite of language within the WS-Transfer specification.

1647 This last restriction is due to the fact that many SOAP processors cannot process multiple child elements  
 1648 within a SOAP s:Body. In general, clients can simply issue a wxf:Get to retrieve the representation,  
 1649 since they will have just acquired an endpoint reference to the new resource.

1650 Following is a hypothetical example of a response for a newly created virtual drive:

```

1651
1652 (1) <s:Envelope
1653 (2)   xmlns:s="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope"
1654 (3)   xmlns:wsa="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing"
1655 (4)   xmlns:wsman="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman.xsd"
1656 (5)   xmlns:wxf="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/transfer">
1657 (6) <s:Header>
1658 (7)   ...
1659 (8)   <wsa:Action>
1660 (9)     http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/transfer/CreateResponse
1661 (10)  </wsa:Action>
1662 (11)   ...
1663 (12) </s:Header>
1664 (13) <s:Body>
1665 (14)   <wxf:ResourceCreated>
1666 (15)     <wsa:Address>
1667 (16)       http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing/role/anonymous/
1668 (17)     </wsa:Address>
1669 (18)     <wsa:ReferenceParameters>
1670 (19)       <wsman:ResourceURI>http://samples.org/2005/02/virtualDrive</wsman:ResourceURI>
1671 (20)       <wsman:SelectorSet>
1672 (21)         <wsman:Selector Name="ID"> F: </wsman:Selector>
1673 (22)       </wsman:SelectorSet>
1674 (23)     </wsa:ReferenceParameters>
  
```

## Web Services for Management

```
1675 (24) </wxf:ResourceCreated>  
1676 (25) </s:Body>  
1677 (26) </s:Envelope>
```

1678 This example assumes the default address format is in use. Note that the response contains two  
1679 sections, the wxf:ResourceCreated (lines 13-23) section, which contains the new endpoint reference of  
1680 the created resource, including its ResourceURI and the SelectorSet. This is the address that would be  
1681 used to retrieve the resource in a subsequent wxf:Get operation.

1682 Note that the service may use a network address which is the same as the <wsa:To> address in the  
1683 wxf:Create request, or may simply use the anonymous address as shown (lines 15-16).

1684 **R4.6-8:** The service MAY ignore any values in the initial representation which are  
1685 considered read-only from the point of view of the underlying real-world  
1686 object.

1687 This is to allow wxf:Get, wxf:Put and wxf:Create to share the same schema. Note that wxf:Put also allows  
1688 the service to ignore read-only properties during an update.

1689 **R4.6-9:** If the success of an operation cannot be reported as described in this  
1690 section and cannot be reversed, a wsman:EncodingLimit fault with a detail  
1691 code of  
1692 [http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/UnreportableSu](http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/UnreportableSuccess)  
1693 [ccess](http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/UnreportableSuccess) SHOULD be returned.

### 1694 4.7 WS-Transfer:Put

1695 If a resource can be updated in its entirety within the constraints of the corresponding XML schema for  
1696 the resource, then the service should support wxf:Put.

1697 **R4.7-1:** A conformant service is NOT REQUIRED to support Wxf:Put.

1698 **R4.7-2:** If a single resource instance can be updated (within the constraints of its  
1699 schema) using a SOAP message, and that resource subsequently can be  
1700 retrieved using wxf:Get, then a service SHOULD support updating the  
1701 resource using wxf:Put. The service MAY additionally export a custom  
1702 method for updates.

1703 **R4.7-3:** If a single resource instance contains a mix of read-only and read-write  
1704 values, the wxf:Put message MAY contain both the read-only and read-  
1705 write values, as long as the XML content is legal with regard to its XML  
1706 schema namespace. In such cases, the service SHOULD ignore the read-  
1707 only values during the update operation. If none of the values are  
1708 writeable, the service SHOULD return a wsa:ActionNotSupported fault.

1709 Note that this typically happens if a wxf:Get operation is performed, a value is altered, and the entire  
1710 updated representation is sent using wxf:Put. In this case, any read-only values will still be present.

1711 Note that a complication arises because wxf:Put must contain the complete new representation for the  
1712 instance. If the resource schema requires the presence of any given value (minOccurs is not zero), it  
1713 must be supplied as part of the wxf:Put message, even if it is not being altered from its original value.

1714 If the schema definition has default values for elements which are optional (minOccurs=0), then the  
1715 wxf:Put message may omit these values and rely on the defaults being observed during the update.

1716 In short, the Body of the wxf:Put message must not violate the constraints of the associated XML  
1717 schema. For example, say that wxf:Get returns the following:  
1718

```

1719 <s:Body>
1720   <MyObject xmlns="examples.org/2005/02/MySchema">
1721     <A> 100 </A>
1722     <B> 200 </B>
1723     <C> 100 </C>
1724   </MyObject>
1725 </s:Body>

```

1726 The corresponding XML schema has defined A, B, and C as minOccurs=1,

```

1727
1728 <xs:element name="MyObjecct">
1729   <xs:complexType>
1730     <xs:sequence>
1731       <xs:element name="A" type="xs:int" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
1732       <xs:element name="B" type="xs:int" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
1733       <xs:element name="C" type="xs:int" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
1734     ...

```

1735 In this case, the corresponding wxf:Put must have all three elements, since the schema mandates that all  
1736 three be present. Even if the only value being updated is <B>, the client has to supply all three values.  
1737 This usually means that the client first has to issue a wxf:Get to preserve the current values of <A> and  
1738 <C>, change <B> to the desired value, and then write the object using wxf:Put. As noted in R4.7-3, the  
1739 service should ignore attempts to update values which are read-only with regard to the underlying real-  
1740 world object.

1741 To update isolated values without having to supply values which will not change, use the fragment-level  
1742 transfer mechanism in section 4.8.

1743  
1744 **R4.7-4:** A conformant service SHOULD support wxf:Put using the same endpoint reference as a  
1745 corresponding wxf:Get or other messages, but this is NOT REQUIRED if the Put mechanism for a  
1746 resource is semantically distinct.

1747  
1748 **R4.7-5:** If the supplied Body does not have the correct content to update the resource, the service  
1749 SHOULD return a wxf:InvalidRepresentation fault and detail codes as follows:

- 1750 • <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InvalidValues> if any values  
1751 in the s:Body are not correct
- 1752 • <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/MissingValues> if any  
1753 values in the s:Body are missing
- 1754 • <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InvalidNamespace> if the  
1755 wrong XML schema namespace is used and is not recognized by the service

1756  
1757 **R4.7-7:** If an object cannot be updated due to locking conditions, simultaneous access, or similar  
1758 conflicts, a wsman:Concurrency fault SHOULD be returned.

1759  
1760 **R4.7-8:** A wxf:Put operation MAY result in a change to the endpoint reference for the resource,  
1761 since the values being updated may in turn cause an identity change.

1762 Since WS-Management services typically delegate the wxf:Put to underlying subsystems, the service  
1763 might not always be aware of an identity change. Clients should make use of the mechanism in section  
1764 3.5 to be informed of EPR changes that may have occurred as a side-effect of executing the wxf:Put.

1765

## Web Services for Management

1766 **R4.7-9:** It is RECOMMENDED that the service return the new representation in all cases. Knowing  
1767 whether the new representation is different than the requested update is often difficult because  
1768 resource-constrained implementations may have insufficient resources to determine the equivalence  
1769 of the requested update from the result.

1770 The implication of this rule is that, if the new representation is not returned, it must have precisely  
1771 matched what was submitted in the wxf:Put message. Since implementations can rarely assure this, they  
1772 should always return the new representation.  
1773

1774 **R4.7-10:** If the success of an operation cannot be reported as described in this section due to  
1775 encoding limits or other reasons and it cannot be reversed, a wsman:EncodingLimit fault with a detail  
1776 code of `http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/UnreportableSuccess` SHOULD  
1777 be returned.

1778  
1779 **R4.7-11:** The Put operation may contain updates of multiple values. The service MUST  
1780 successfully carry out an update of all the specified values or return the fault which was the cause of  
1781 the error. If any fault is returned, the implication is that  $0..n-1$  values were updated out of  $n$  possible  
1782 update values.

1783

## 1784 4.8 Fragment-Level WS-Transfer

1785 Because WS-Transfer works with entire instances and it may be inconvenient to specify hundreds or  
1786 thousands of EPRs just to model fragment-level access with full EPRs, WS-Management supports the  
1787 concept of fragment-level (property) access of resources that are normally accessed via WS-Transfer  
1788 operations. This is done using special usage of WS-Transfer.

1789 Because of the XML schema limitations discussed in section 4.7, simply returning a subset of the XML  
1790 defined for the object being accessed is often incorrect, as a subset may violate the XML schema for that  
1791 fragment. To support transfer of fragments or individual elements of a representation object, several  
1792 modifications to the basic WS-Transfer operations are made.

1793 **R4.8-1** A conformant service is NOT REQUIRED to support fragment-level WS-  
1794 Transfer. If the service supports fragment-level access, the service MUST  
1795 NOT behave as if normal WS-Transfer operations were in place, but MUST  
1796 operate exclusively on the fragments specified. If the service does not  
1797 support fragment-level access, it MUST return a  
1798 wsman:UnsupportedFeature fault with a detail code of  
1799 `http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/FragmentLevelA`  
1800 `ccess`.

1801 **R4.8-2** A conformant service which supports fragment-level WS-Transfer MUST  
1802 accept the following SOAP header in all requests and include it in all  
1803 responses which transport the fragments:  
1804

```
1805 <wsman:FragmentTransfer s:mustUnderstand="true">  
1806   xpath to fragment  
1807 </wsman:FragmentTransfer>
```

1808 The default value of this header is the XPath 1.0 expression identifying the  
1809 fragment being transferred (using [http://www.w3.org/TR/1999/REC-  
1810 xpath-19991116](http://www.w3.org/TR/1999/REC-xpath-19991116)), with relation to the full representation of the object. If an  
1811 expression other than XPath 1.0 is used, a Dialect attribute MUST be  
1812 added to indicate this, as follows:  
1813

```

1814 <wsman:FragmentTransfer s:mustUnderstand="true"
1815     Dialect="URIToNewSelectorDialect">
1816     dialect text
1817 </wsman:FragmentTransfer>

```

1818 The client needs to understand that unless the header is marked *mustUnderstand="true"*, the service  
 1819 might process the request while ignoring the header, resulting in unexpected and potentially serious side-  
 1820 effects.

1821 Note that XPath is special-cased due to its importance, but it is not mandated. Any other type of  
 1822 language to describe fragment-level access is permitted as long as the Dialect value is set to indicate to  
 1823 the service what dialect is being used.

1824 **R4.8-3** For WS-Transfer operations, the Dialect used is XPath 1.0  
 1825 (<http://www.w3.org/TR/1999/REC-xpath-19991116>), so the following rules  
 1826 hold when interpreting the XPath:

1827 Value of /s:Header/wsman:FragmentTransfer is an XPath [[XPath 1.0](#)]  
 1828 expression. The context of the expression is:

- 1829 • Context Node: The body of the XML element that would be returned as a direct child  
 1830 s:Body if fragment transfer were not in use.
- 1831 • Context Position: 1.
- 1832 • Context Size: 1.
- 1833 • Variable Bindings: None.
- 1834 • Function Libraries: Core Function Library [[XPath 1.0](#)].
- 1835 • Namespace Declarations: The [in-scope namespaces] property [[XML Infoset](#)] of the  
 1836 first child of /s:Envelope/s:Body.

1837 This means that the XPath is to be interpreted relative to XML of the returned object and not relative to  
 1838 any of the SOAP content.

1839 For WS-Enumeration, the XPath is interpreted as defined in the WS-Enumeration specification, although  
 1840 the output is subsequently wrapped in wsman:XmlFragment wrappers after the XPath is evaluated.

1841 Note that an XPath value may refer to the entire node, so the concept of a fragment can include the entire  
 1842 object, making fragment-level WS-Transfer a proper superset of normal WS-Transfer.

1843 If the full XPath cannot be supported, a common subset for this purpose is described in Chapter 12 of this  
 1844 specification. However, in such cases, the Dialect value is still that of XPath.

1845  
 1846 **R4.8-4** If a service understands fragment transfers but does not understand the specified fragment  
 1847 dialect or the default dialect, then the service MUST issue a wsman:FragmentDialectNotSupported  
 1848 fault.

1849  
 1850 **R4.8-5** All transfers in either direction of the XML fragments must be wrapped with a  
 1851 <wsman:XmlFragment> wrapper containing a definition which suppresses validation and allows any  
 1852 content to pass. A service MUST reject any attempt to use wsman:FragmentTransfer unless the  
 1853 s:Body wraps the content using a wsman:XmlFragment wrapper. If any other usage is encountered,  
 1854 the service MUST fault the request using a wxf:InvalidRepresentation fault with a detail code of  
 1855 <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InvalidFragment>.

## Web Services for Management

1856 Fragment transfer may occur at any level, including single element, complex elements, simple values,  
1857 and attributes. In practice, services typically will only support value-level access to elements:  
1858

1859 **R4.8-6** If fragment-level WS-Transfer is supported, a conformant service SHOULD support at least  
1860 leaf-node, value-level access using an XPath using the **/text()** function. In this case, the value is not  
1861 wrapped with XML, but is transferred directly as text within the wsman:XmlFragment wrapper.

1862 In essence, the transferred content is whatever an XPath operation over the full XML would produce.

1863  
1864 **R4.8-7** For all fragment-level operations, partial successes are NOT permitted. The entire meaning  
1865 of the XPath or other dialect MUST be fully observed by the service in all operations, and the entire  
1866 fragment that is specified MUST be successfully transferred in either direction. Otherwise, faults  
1867 occur as if none of the operation had succeeded.

1868 All faults are the same as for normal, "full" WS-Transfer operations.

1869 The following sections show how the underlying WS-Transfer operations change when transferring XML  
1870 fragments.

### 1871 **4.9 Fragment-Level WS-Transfer: Get**

1872 Fragment-level gets are similar to full wxf:Get, except for the wsman:FragmentTransfer header (line 24).  
1873 This example is drawn from the example in section 4.2:  
1874

```
1875 <s:Envelope  
1876   xmlns:s="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope"  
1877   xmlns:wsa="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing"  
1878   xmlns:wsman="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman.xsd">  
1879   <s:Header>  
1880     <wsa:To>  
1881       http://1.2.3.4/wsman  
1882     </wsa:To>  
1883     <wsman:ResourceURI>http://samples.org/2005/02/physicalDisk</wsman:ResourceURI>  
1884     <wsa:ReplyTo>  
1885       <wsa:Address>  
1886         http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing/role/anonymous  
1887       </wsa:Address>  
1888     </wsa:ReplyTo>  
1889     <wsa:Action>  
1890       http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/transfer/Get  
1891     </wsa:Action>  
1892     <wsa:MessageID>  
1893       uuid:d9726315-bc91-430b-9ed8-ce5ffb858a87  
1894     </wsa:MessageID>  
1895     <wsman:SelectorSet>  
1896       <wsman:Selector Name="LUN"> 2 </wsman:Selector>  
1897     </wsman:SelectorSet>  
1898     <wsman:OperationTimeout> PT30S </wsman:OperationTimeout>  
1899     <wsman:FragmentTransfer s:mustUnderstand="true">  
1900       Manufacturer  
1901     </wsman:FragmentTransfer>  
1902   </s:Header>
```

```

1903 <s:Body/>
1904 </s:Envelope>

```

In this case, the service will execute the specified XPath against the representation that would normally have been retrieved, and then return a fragment instead.

Note that the service MUST repeat the **wsman:FragmentTransfer** in the wxf:GetResponse (lines 47–49) to reference the fragment and signal that a fragment has been transferred. The response is wrapped in a wsman:XmlFragment wrapper, which suppresses the schema validation which would otherwise apply:

```

(27) <s:Envelope
(28)   xmlns:s="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope"
(29)   xmlns:wsa="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing"
(30)   xmlns:wsman="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman.xsd">
(31) <s:Header>
(32)   <wsa:To>
(33)     http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing/role/anonymous
(34)   </wsa:To>
(35)   <wsa:Action s:mustUnderstand="true">
(36)     http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/transfer/GetResponse
(37)   </wsa:Action>
(38)   <wsa:MessageID s:mustUnderstand="true">
(39)     uuid:d9726315-bc91-430b-9ed8-ce5ffb858a88
(40)   </wsa:MessageID>
(41)   <wsa:RelatesTo>
(42)     uuid:d9726315-bc91-430b-9ed8-ce5ffb858a87
(43)   </wsa:RelatesTo>
(44)   <wsman:FragmentTransfer s:mustUnderstand="true">
(45)     Manufacturer
(46)   </wsman:FragmentTransfer>
(47) </s:Header>
(48) <s:Body>
(49)   <wsman:XmlFragment>
(50)     <Manufacturer> Acme, Inc. </Manufacturer>
(51)   </wsman:XmlFragment>
(52) </s:Body>
(53) </s:Envelope>

```

The output (lines 52-54) is like that supplied by a typical XPath processor and may or may not contain XML namespace information or attributes.

To receive the value in isolation without an XML wrapper, the client can use XPath techniques such as the text() operator to retrieve just the values. See the following example request:

```

(54) <wsman:FragmentTransfer s:mustUnderstand="true">
(55)   Manufacturer/text()
(56) </wsman:FragmentTransfer>

```

The above request will yield this XML:

```

(57) <wsman:XmlFragment>
(58)   Acme, Inc.

```

## Web Services for Management

1950 (59) </wsman:XmlFragment>

### 1951 4.10 Fragment-Level WS-Transfer:Put

1952 Fragment-level WS-Transfer:Put works like regular wxf:Put except that it only transfers the part being  
1953 updated. While the fragment may be considered part of an instance from the observer's perspective, the  
1954 referenced fragment is treated as the "instance" during the execution of the operation.

1955 It is important to note that wxf:Put is *always* an update operation of an existing element, whether a simple  
1956 element or an array. To create or insert new elements, wxf:Create is required.

1957 Use the following XML for illustrative purposes:

```
1958  
1959 X <a>  
1960 X <b>  
1961 X <c> </c>  
1962 X <d> </d>  
1963 X </b>  
1964 X <e>  
1965 X <f> </f>  
1966 X <g> </g>  
1967 X </e>  
1968 X </a>
```

1969 While <a> is the entire representation of the resource instance, if the operation references the a/b node  
1970 during the wxf:Put, using an XPath expression of "b", then the content of <b> is updated without touching  
1971 other parts of <a>, such as <e>. If the client wants only to update <d>, then the XPath expression used is  
1972 "b/d".

1973 Continuing from the example in sections 4.2, if the client wanted to update the <BootPartition> value from  
1974 0 to 1, then the following wxf:Put fragment could be sent to the service:

```
1975  
1976 X <s:Envelope  
1977 X xmlns:s="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope"  
1978 X xmlns:wsa="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing"  
1979 X xmlns:wsman="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman.xsd">  
1980 X <s:Header>  
1981 X <wsa:To>  
1982 X http://1.2.3.4/wsman  
1983 X </wsa:To>  
1984 X <wsman:ResourceURI>http://samples.org/2005/02/physicalDisk</wsman:ResourceURI>  
1985 X <wsa:ReplyTo>  
1986 X <wsa:Address>  
1987 X http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing/role/anonymous  
1988 X </wsa:Address>  
1989 X </wsa:ReplyTo>  
1990 X <wsa:Action>  
1991 X http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/transfer/Put  
1992 X </wsa:Action>  
1993 X <wsa:MessageID>  
1994 X uuid:d9726315-bc91-430b-9ed8-ce5ffb858a87  
1995 X </wsa:MessageID>  
1996 X <wsman:SelectorSet>
```

```

1997 <wsman:Selector Name="LUN"> 2 </wsman:Selector>
1998 </wsman:SelectorSet>
1999 <wsman:OperationTimeout> PT30S </wsman:OperationTimeout>
2000 <wsman:FragmentTransfer s:mustUnderstand="true">
2001   BootPartition
2002 </wsman:FragmentTransfer>
2003 </s:Header>
2004 <s:Body>
2005   <wsman:XmlFragment>
2006     <BootPartition> 1 </BootPartition>
2007   </wsman:XmlFragment>
2008 </s:Body>
2009 </s:Envelope>
2010

```

2011 Note that the <BootPartition> wrapper is present because the XPath value specifies this. If  
 2012 "BootPartition/text()" were used as the expression, then the Body could contain just the value, as follows:

```

2014 ...
2015 <wsman:FragmentTransfer s:mustUnderstand="true">
2016   BootPartition/text()
2017 </wsman:FragmentTransfer>
2018 </s:Header>
2019 <s:Body>
2020   <wsman:XmlFragment>
2021     1
2022   </wsman:XmlFragment>
2023 </s:Body>

```

2024 If the corresponding update occurs, the new representation matches, so no s:Body result is expected,  
 2025 although returning it is always legal. If a value does not match what was requested, the service only  
 2026 needs to supply the parts that are different than what is requested. This would generally not occur for  
 2027 single values, since a failure to honor the new value would result in a wxf:InvalidRepresentation fault.

2028 The following is a sample reply:

```

2030 <s:Envelope
2031   xmlns:s="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope"
2032   xmlns:wsa="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing"
2033   xmlns:wsman="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman.xsd">
2034 <s:Header>
2035   <wsa:To>
2036     http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing/role/anonymous
2037   </wsa:To>
2038   <wsa:Action s:mustUnderstand="true">
2039     http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/transfer/PutResponse
2040   </wsa:Action>
2041   <wsa:MessageID s:mustUnderstand="true">
2042     uuid:d9726315-bc91-430b-9ed8-ce5ffb858a88
2043   </wsa:MessageID>
2044   <wsa:RelatesTo>

```

## Web Services for Management

```
2045 <wsa:RelatesTo>
2046 </wsa:RelatesTo>
2047 <wsman:FragmentTransfer s:mustUnderstand="true">
2048   BootPartition/text()
2049 </wsman:FragmentTransfer>
2050 </s:Header>
2051 <s:Body>
2052   <wsman:XmlFragment>
2053     1
2054   </wsman:XmlFragment>
2055 </s:Body>
2056 </s:Envelope>
```

2057 **R4.10-1** As for normal wxf:Put, the service MAY ignore any read-only values  
2058 supplied as part of the fragment for updating.

2059 **R4.10-2** If the service encounters an attempt to update a read-only value, a  
2060 wsman:ActionNotSupported fault is returned with a detail code of  
2061 http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/ReadOnly.

2062 Note that the fragment-level Put implies replacement or update and does not insert new values into the  
2063 representation object. Thus, it is not appropriate to use wxf:Put to insert a new value at the end of an  
2064 array, for example. The entire array can be returned and then updated and replaced (since it is therefore  
2065 an update of the entire array), but a single operation to insert a new element in the middle or at the end of  
2066 an array is actually a wxf:Create.

2067 WS-Transfer states that if the new representation differs from the input, then it should be returned in the  
2068 response. With fragment-level wxf:Put, this only applies to the portion of the representation object being  
2069 written, not the entire object. If a single value is written and accepted, but has side-effects on other  
2070 values in the representation, the entire object is *not* returned.

2071 To set a value to NULL without removing it as an element, use an attribute value of xsi:nil on the element  
2072 being set to NULL to ensure that the fragment path is adjusted appropriately:

```
2073
2074 (60) <wsman:FragmentTransfer s:mustUnderstand="true">
2075 (61)   AssetLabel
2076 (62) </wsman:FragmentTransfer>
2077 (63) <s:Body>
2078 (64)   <wsman:XmlFragment xmlns:xsi="www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">
2079 (65)     <AssetLabel xsi:nil="true"/>
2080 (66)   </wsman:XmlFragment>
2081 (67) </s:Body>
```

### 2082 4.11 Fragment-Level WS-Transfer:Create

2083 Use of wxf:Create for fragments only applies if the XML schema for the targeted object supports optional  
2084 elements which are not currently present, or supports arrays with varying numbers of elements and the  
2085 client wishes to insert an element in an array (a repeated element). If entire array replacement is needed,  
2086 then Fragment-level wxf:Put should be used. For array access, the XPath array access notation (the [ ]  
2087 operators) can be conveniently used. Note that wxf:Create may only be used to add new content, but  
2088 cannot update existing content.

2089 To insert a value which may be legally added (according to the rules of the schema for the object), the  
2090 wsman:FragmentTransfer identifies the path of the item to be added. For instance, assume the following

2091 message fragment is sent to a LogicalDisk resource:

2092

```
2093 <wsman:FragmentTransfer s:mustUnderstand="true">
```

```
2094     VolumeLabel
```

```
2095 </wsman:FragmentTransfer>
```

2096 In this case, the <Body> contains both the element and the value:

2097

```
2098 <s:Body>
```

```
2099     <wsman:XmlFragment>
```

```
2100         <VolumeLabel> MyDisk </VolumeLabel>
```

```
2101     </wsman:XmlFragment>
```

```
2102 </s:Body>
```

```
2103 </s:Envelope>
```

2104 This would presumably result in the creation of a <VolumeLabel> element where none existed before.

2105 To create the target using value alone, apply the XPath text() operator to the path, as follows:

2106

```
2107 <wsman:FragmentTransfer s:mustUnderstand="true">
```

```
2108     VolumeLabel/text ()
```

```
2109 </wsman:FragmentTransfer>
```

2110 The body of wxf:Create contains the value to be inserted and is the same as for fragment-level wxf:Put:

2111

```
2112 <s:Body>
```

```
2113     <wsman:XmlFragment>
```

```
2114         MyDisk
```

```
2115     </wsman:XmlFragment>
```

```
2116 </s:Body>
```

```
2117 </s:Envelope>
```

2118 To create an array element in the target, the XPath [ ] operator may be used. To insert a new element at  
2119 the end of the array, the user must know the number of elements in the array so that the new index can  
2120 be used. The following message fragment is sent to an InternetServer resource:

2121

```
2122 <wsman:FragmentTransfer s:mustUnderstand="true">
```

```
2123     BlockedIPAddress [3]
```

```
2124 </wsman:FragmentTransfer>
```

2125 Insertion of a new element within the array is done using the index of the desired location, and the array  
2126 expands at that location to accommodate the new element. Note that using wxf:Put at this location  
2127 *overwrites* the existing array element, whereas wxf:Create inserts a *new* element, making the array  
2128 larger.

2129 The body of wxf:Create contains the value to be inserted and is the same as for fragment-level wxf:Put:

2130

```
2131 <s:Body>
```

```
2132     <wsman:XmlFragment>
```

```
2133         <BlockedIPAddress> 123.12.188.44 </BlockedIPAddress>
```

```
2134     </wsman:XmlFragment>
```

```
2135 </s:Body>
```

```
2136 </s:Envelope>
```

## Web Services for Management

2137 This will presumably result in adding a third IP address to the <BlockedIPAddress> array (a repeated  
2138 element), assuming at least two elements are at that level already.

2139 **R4.11-1:** A service MUST not use wxf:Create to perform an update on an existing  
2140 representation. The targeted object must not already exist, or else the  
2141 service SHOULD return a wsman:AlreadyExists fault.

2142 **R4.11-2:** If the wxf:Create fails because the result would not conform to the schema  
2143 in some way, a wxf:InvalidRepresentation fault is returned.

2144 As defined in section 4.6, the wxf:CreateResponse contains the EPR of the created resource. In the case  
2145 of fragment-level Create, the response additionally contains the wsman:FragmentTransfer block,  
2146 including the path (line 12) in a SOAP header. Note that the wxf:ResourceCreated EPR continues to refer  
2147 to the entire object, not just the fragment:  
2148

```
2149 (68) <s:Envelope  
2150 (69)   xmlns:s="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope"  
2151 (70)   xmlns:wsa="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing"  
2152 (71)   xmlns:wsman="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman.xsd"  
2153 (72)   xmlns:wxf="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/transfer">  
2154 (73) <s:Header>  
2155 (74)   ...  
2156 (75)   <wsa:Action>  
2157 (76)     http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/transfer/CreateResponse  
2158 (77)   </wsa:Action>  
2159 (78)   ...  
2160 (79)   <wsman:FragmentTransfer s:mustUnderstand="true">  
2161 (80)     Path To Fragment  
2162 (81)   </wsman:FragmentTransfer>  
2163 (82)  
2164 (83) <s:Body>  
2165 (84)   <wxf:ResourceCreated>  
2166 (85)     <wsa:Address> ... </wsa:Address>  
2167 (86)     <wsa:ReferenceParameters>  
2168 (87)       <wsman:SelectorSet>  
2169 (88)         <wsman:Selector ...> </wsman:Selector>  
2170 (89)       </wsman:SelectorSet>  
2171 (90)     </wsa:ReferenceParameters>  
2172 (91)   </wxf:ResourceCreated>  
2173 (92) </s:Body>  
2174 (93) </s:Envelope>
```

2175 As discussed in section 4.6, to remain compatible with WSDL, only the EPR of the item is returned in the  
2176 SOAP Body, in spite of other options discussed in the WS-Transfer specification.

### 2177 4.12 Fragment-Level WS-Transfer:Delete

2178 Use of wxf:Delete for fragments only applies if the XML schema for the targeted object supports optional  
2179 elements which may be removed from the representation object, or supports arrays (repeated elements)  
2180 with varying numbers of elements and the client wishes to remove an element in an array. If entire array  
2181 replacement is needed, then Fragment-level Put should be used. For array access, the XPath array  
2182 access notation can be conveniently used.

2183 To delete a value which may be legally removed (according to the rules of the schema for the object), the  
 2184 wsman:FragmentTransfer identifies the path of the item to be removed:  
 2185

```
2186 <wsman:FragmentTransfer s:mustUnderstand="true">
2187   VolumeLabel
2188 </wsman:FragmentTransfer>
```

2189 To set a value to NULL without removing it as an element, use Fragment-level wxf:Put with a value of  
 2190 xsi:nil.

2191 To delete an array element, use the XPath [ ] operators. The following example deletes the third <User>  
 2192 element in the representation:  
 2193

```
2194 <wsman:FragmentTransfer s:mustUnderstand="true">
2195   BlockedIPAddress[2]
2196 </wsman:FragmentTransfer>
```

2197 Note that the <Body> is empty for all wxf:Delete operations, even with fragment-level access, and all  
 2198 normal faults for wxf:Delete apply.

2199 **R4.12-1:** If a value cannot be deleted due to locking conditions or similar  
 2200 phenomena, a wsman:AccessDenied fault SHOULD be returned.

## 2201 5 WS-Enumeration

### 2202 5.1 Introduction

2203 If a multi-instanced resource provides a mechanism for enumerating or querying the set of instances,  
 2204 then WS-Enumeration performs the iteration.

2205 **R5.1-1:** A service is NOT REQUIRED to support WS-Enumeration if enumeration of  
 2206 any kind is not supported.

2207 **R5.1-2:** If simple, unfiltered enumeration of resource instances is exposed through  
 2208 Web services, a conformant service MUST support WS-Enumeration to  
 2209 expose this. The service MAY also support other techniques for  
 2210 enumerating the instances.

2211 **R5.1-3:** If filtered enumeration (queries) of resource instances is exposed through  
 2212 Web services, a conformant service SHOULD support WS-Enumeration to  
 2213 expose this. The service MAY also support other techniques for  
 2214 enumerating the instances.

2215 The WS-Enumeration specification indicates that enumeration is a three-part operation: An initial  
 2216 wsen:Enumerate is issued to establish the enumeration context and wsen:Pull operations are used to  
 2217 iterate over the result set. When the enumeration iterator is no longer required and not yet exhausted, a  
 2218 wsen:Release is issued to release the enumerator and associated resources. As with other WS-  
 2219 Management methods, the enumeration may make use of wsman:OptionSet.

2220 If the default addressing model is used, the service may make use of the SelectorSet to scope the  
 2221 enumeration, although typically the ResourceURI would be used alone.

2222

2223 **R5.1-4:** A service is NOT REQUIRED to implement any of the following messages  
 2224 from WS-Enumeration and implementing them is NOT RECOMMENDED:

## Web Services for Management

2225 Renew, GetStatus, or EnumerationEnd or any associated responses.  
2226 Since these messages are OPTIONAL, it is RECOMMENDED that the  
2227 service fault both Renew and GetStatus requests with a  
2228 wsa:ActionNotSupported fault.

2229 **R5.1-5:** If a service is exposing enumeration, it MUST at least support the following  
2230 messages: wsen:Enumerate, wsen:Pull, and wsen:Release, and their  
2231 associated responses.

2232 If the service does not support stateful enumerators, the Release may be a simple no-op in reality, so it is  
2233 trivial to implement (it always succeeds when the operation is valid). But it must be supported in any case  
2234 to allow for the uniform construction of clients.

2235 **R5.1-6:** The wsen:Pull and wsen:Release operations are a continuation of the  
2236 original wsen:Enumerate. The service SHOULD enforce the same  
2237 authentication and authorization throughout the entire sequence of  
2238 operations and SHOULD fault any attempt to change credentials during the  
2239 sequence.

2240 Note that some transports like HTTP may drop or reestablish connections between wsen:Enumerate and  
2241 subsequent wsen:Pull operations, or between wsen:Pull operations. It is expected that services will allow  
2242 the enumeration to continue uninterrupted, but for practical reasons some services may require that the  
2243 same connection be used. This specification establishes no requirements in this regard. However, R5.1-  
2244 6 establishes that the user credentials may not change during the entire enumeration sequence.

## 2245 5.2 WS-Enumeration:Enumerate

2246 Enumerations are initiated by the wsen:Enumerate message.

### 2247 5.2.1 General

2248 **R5.2.1-1:** A conformant service is NOT REQUIRED to accept a wsen:Enumerate  
2249 message with an EndTo address as R5.1-4 recommends not supporting  
2250 the EndEnumerate message, and may issue a wsman:UnsupportedFeature  
2251 fault with a detail code of  
2252 <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/AddressingMod>  
2253 e.

2254 **R5.2.1-2:** A conformant service MUST accept a wsen:Enumerate message with an  
2255 Expires timeout or fault with wsman:UnsupportedFeature and a detail code  
2256 of  
2257 <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/ExpirationTime>.

2258 **R5.2.1-3:** The wsman:Filter element (see section 5.3) in the wsen:Enumerate body  
2259 MUST be either simple text or a single complex XML element. A  
2260 conformant service MUST NOT accept mixed content of both text and  
2261 elements, or multiple peer XML elements under the wsman:Filter element.

2262 While this use of mixed content is allowed in the general case of WS-Enumeration, it is unnecessarily  
2263 complex for WS-Management implementations.

2264 A common filter dialect is <http://www.w3.org/TR/1999/REC-xpath-19991116>, which is XPath 1.0.  
2265 Resource-constrained implementations may have difficulty exporting full XPath processing and yet still  
2266 wish to use a subset of XPath syntax. As long as the filter expression is a proper subset of the specified  
2267 dialect, it is legal and may be described using that Dialect value.

2268 No rule mandates the use of XPath or any subset as a filtering dialect. Note that if no Dialect is specified,  
2269 the default interpretation is that the Filter value is in fact XPath (as specified in WS-Enumeration).

2270 **R5.2.1-4:** A conformant service is NOT REQUIRED to support the entire syntax and  
 2271 processing power of the specified Filter Dialect. The only requirement is  
 2272 that the specified Filter is syntactically correct within the definition of the  
 2273 Dialect. Subsets are therefore legal. If the specified filter exceeds the  
 2274 capability of the service, a wsen:CannotProcessFilter fault SHOULD be  
 2275 returned with some text indication as to what went wrong.

2276 Some services REQUIRE filters to function, as their search space is so large that simple enumeration is  
 2277 meaningless or impossible.

2278 **R5.2.1-5:** A conformant service MUST fault any request without a wsman:Filter if a  
 2279 wsman:Filter is actually required, using a wsman:UnsupportedFeature fault  
 2280 with a detail code of  
 2281 [http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/FilteringRequire](http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/FilteringRequired)  
 2282 [d](http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/FilteringRequired).

2283 **R5.2.1-6:** A conformant service MAY block, fault (using wsman:Concurrency faults),  
 2284 or allow other concurrent operations on the resource for the duration of the  
 2285 enumeration, and MAY include or exclude the results of such operations as  
 2286 part of any enumeration still in progress.

2287 If clients execute other operations, such as wxf:Create or wxf:Delete while an enumeration is occurring,  
 2288 this specification makes no restrictions on the behavior of the enumeration. The service may include or  
 2289 exclude the results of these operations in real-time, or may produce an initial snapshot of the enumeration  
 2290 and execute the wsen:Pull requests from this snapshot, or may deny access to other operations while  
 2291 enumerations are in progress.

## 2292 5.2.2 Enumeration "Count" Option

2293 In order to give clients an estimate of the number of items in an enumeration, two optional SOAP headers  
 2294 are defined; one for use in the request message to return an approximate count of items in an  
 2295 enumeration sequence, and a corresponding header for use in the response to return this value to the  
 2296 client.

2297 These SOAP headers are defined for use with the wsen:Enumerate and wsen:Pull messages and their  
 2298 responses. The headers for use in wsen:Enumerate or wsen:Pull is  
 2299

```
2300 (1) <s:Header>
2301 (2) ...
2302 (3) <wsman:RequestTotalItemsCountEstimate .../>
2303 (4) </s:Header>
2304 (5)
```

2305 The header used by the service to return the value is

```
2306 (6) <s:Header>
2307 (7) ...
2308 (8) <wsman:TotalItemsCountEstimate>
2309 (9) xs:nonNegativeInteger
2310 (10) </wsman: TotalItemsCountEstimate>
2311 (11) </s:Header>
```

2312 The following describes additional, normative constraints on the outlines listed above:

2313 wsman:RequestTotalItemsCountEstimate

2314 The presence of this element (no value is required) as a SOAP header on an wsen:Enumerate or  
 2315 wsen:Pull message indicates that the client is requesting that the associated response message

## Web Services for Management

2316 should include an estimate of the total number of items in the enumeration sequence. This SOAP  
2317 header does not have any meaning defined by this specification when included with any other  
2318 messages.

2319 wsman:TotalItemsCountEstimate

2320 The presence of this element as a SOAP header on an wsen:EnumerateResponse or  
2321 wsen:PullResponse message indicates the approximate number of items in the enumeration  
2322 sequence. This is the total number of items and not the remaining number of items in the sequence.  
2323 This SOAP header does not have any meaning defined by this specification when included with any  
2324 other messages.

2325 When a services understands the TotalItemsCountEstimate feature, but cannot determine the  
2326 number of items for some reason, the service will respond with the wsman:TotalItemsCountEstimate  
2327 element having an xsi:nil attribute with value 'true', and having no value:

2328

```
2329 (12) <wsman:TotalItemsCountEstimate xsi:nil="true"/>
```

2330

2331

2332 **R5.2.2-1:** A conformant service MAY support the ability to return an estimate of the number of items  
2333 in an enumeration sequence. If a service receives an wsen:Enumerate or wsen:Pull message  
2334 without the wsman:RequestTotalItemsCountEstimate SOAP header, the service MUST NOT return  
2335 the wsman:TotalItemsCountEstimate SOAP header on the associated response message.  
2336

2337 **R5.2.2-2:** The value returned in the wsman:TotalItemsCountEstimate SOAP header is only an  
2338 estimate of the number of items in the sequence. The client SHOULD NOT use the  
2339 wsman:TotalItemsCountEstimate value for determining an end of enumeration instead of using  
2340 EndOfSequence.

2341 This mechanism is intended to assist clients in determining the percentage of completion of an  
2342 enumeration as it progresses. When a service sends a result count estimate after a previous estimate  
2343 for the same enumeration sequence, the most recent total results count estimate is considered to be the  
2344 more precise estimate.

2345

### 2346 5.2.3 Optimization For Enumerations With Small Result Sets

2347 In order to optimize the number of round-trip messages required to enumerate the items in an  
2348 enumerable resource, a client may request optimized enumeration behavior. This is useful in cases  
2349 where the enumeration has such a small number of items that the initial wsen:EnumerateResponse could  
2350 reasonably include the entire result, without the need for a subsequent wsen:Pull to retrieve the items.  
2351 This mechanism may be used even for large enumerations in order to get the first few results in the initial  
2352 response.

2353 A client initiates an optimized enumeration by placing the wsman:OptimizeEnumeration element as child  
2354 element of the wsen:Enumerate element, and can optionally include the wsman:MaxElements element.

2355

```
2356 (1) ...
```

```
2357 (2) <s:Body>
```

```
2358 (3)   <wsen:Enumerate>
```

```
2359 (4)     ...
```

```
2360 (5)       <wsman:OptimizeEnumeration/>
```

```
2361 (6)       <wsman:MaxElements>xsi:positiveInteger</wsman:MaxElements> ?
```

```
2362 (7)     </wsen:Enumerate>
```

```
2363 (8) </s:Body>
```

2364 The following describes additional, normative constraints on the outline listed above:

2365 wsman:OptimizeEnumeration

2366 The presence of this element as a child of the wsen:Enumerate element indicates that the client is  
2367 requesting an optimized enumeration.

2368 wsman:MaxElements

2369 This OPTIONAL element (of type xs:positiveInteger) indicates the maximum number of items the  
2370 consumer is willing to accept in the wsen:EnumerateResponse. When this element is absent, its  
2371 implied value is 1. Implementations MUST NOT return more than this number of elements in the  
2372 Enumerate response message. Implementations MAY return fewer than this number based on either  
2373 the wsman:OperationTimeout SOAP header, wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize SOAP header, or  
2374 implementation-specific constraints.

2375

2376 **R5.2.3-1:** A conformant service MAY support enumeration optimization. If a service receives the  
2377 wsman:OptimizeEnumeration element in an wsen:Enumerate message and it does not support  
2378 enumeration optimization, it SHOULD ignore the element and complete the enumeration request as  
2379 described in WS-Enumeration.

2380 Note that if the service ignores the element, the client continues with a subsequent wsen:Pull as if the  
2381 option was not in force. The client requires no special mechanisms over what was needed for normal  
2382 WS-Enumeration if the optimization request is ignored.

2383

2384 **R5.2.3-2:** A conformant service receiving an wsen:Enumerate message without the  
2385 wsman:OptimizeEnumeration element MUST NOT return any enumeration items in the  
2386 wsen:EnumerateResponse message and MUST return an wsen:EnumerationContext initialized to  
2387 return the first items when the first wsen:Pull message is received.

2388 Clearly, the service must not implement the optimization if it was not requested, or clients unaware of the  
2389 optimization will incorrectly process the enumeration result.

2390

2391 **R5.2.3-3:** A conformant service receiving an wsen:Enumerate message with the  
2392 wsman:OptimizeEnumeration element and without a wsman:MaxElements element MUST interpret  
2393 the request as being for zero or one item in the optimized response. The service MUST not return a  
2394 count of items larger than one unless specifically requested.

2395

2396 When requested by the client, a service implementing the optimized enumeration will respond with the  
2397 following additional content in an wsen:EnumerateResponse message:

2398

```
2399 (9) <s:Body>
2400 (10)   <wsen:EnumerateResponse>
2401 (11)     <wsen:EnumerationContext> ... </wsen:EnumerationContext>
2402 (12)     <wsman:Items>
2403 (13)       ...same as for wsen:Items in wsen:PullResponse
2404 (14)     </wsman:Items> ?
2405 (15)     <wsman:EndOfSequence/> ?
2406 (16)   <wsen:EnumerateResponse> ... </wsen:EnumerateResponse>
2407 (17) </s:Body>
```

2408 The following describes additional, normative constraints on the outline listed above:

## Web Services for Management

2409 wsman:Items

2410 The optional element contains one or more enumeration-specific elements as would have been  
2411 encoded for wsen:Items in a wsen:PullResponse. The service will return no more than  
2412 wsman:MaxElements elements in this list if wsman:MaxElements is specified in the request  
2413 message, or one element if wsman:MaxElements was omitted.

2414 wsman:EndOfSequence

2415 This optional element indicates that no more elements are available from this enumeration and that  
2416 the entire result (even if there are zero elements) is contained within the wsman:Items element.

2417 wsen:EnumerationContext

2418 The wsen:EnumerateResponse message requires the presence of a wsen:EnumerationContext. If  
2419 the wsman:EndOfSequence is also present, clearly the wsen:EnumerationContext cannot be used in  
2420 a subsequent wsen:Pull request. The service SHOULD observe the same fault usage that would  
2421 occur if the wsen:EnumerationContext were used in a wsen:Pull request after the  
2422 wsen:EndOfSequence element occurred in a wsen:PullResponse. Note that while the  
2423 wsen:EnumerationContext MUST be present, there is no value required, so in cases where the  
2424 wsman:EndOfSequence is present, the value for wsen:EnumerationContext SHOULD be empty:

2425

2426 (18) ...

2427 (19) <s:Body>

2428 (20) <wsen:EnumerateResponse>

2429 (21) <wsen:EnumerationContext/>

2430 (22) <wsman:Items>

2431 (23) Items

2432 (24) </wsman:Items>

2433 (25) <wsman:EndOfSequence/>

2434 (26) <wsen:EnumerateResponse> ... </wsen:EnumerateResponse>

2435 (27) </s:Body>

2436 (28)

2437

2438 **R5.2.3-4:** A conformant service that supports optimized enumeration and is responding with an  
2439 wsen:EnumerateResponse message MUST include either or both the wsman:Items or  
2440 wsman:EndOfSequence elements in the response as an indication to the client that the optimized  
2441 enumeration request was understood and honored.

2442 If neither wsman:Items nor wsman:EndOfSequence is in the wsen:EnumerateResponse message, the  
2443 client can continue to use the enumeration message exchanges as they are defined in WS-Enumeration.

2444

2445 **R5.2.3-5:** A conformant service that supports optimized enumeration and has not returned all items  
2446 of the enumeration sequence in the wsen:EnumerateResponse message MUST return an  
2447 wsen:EnumerationContext that is initialized such that a subsequent wsen:Pull message will return  
2448 the set of items after those returned in the wsen:EnumerateResponse. If all items of the enumeration  
2449 sequence have been returned in the wsen:EnumerateResponse message, the service SHOULD  
2450 return an empty wsen:EnumerationContext element and MUST return the wsman:EndOfSequence  
2451 element in the response.

2452 A client that has requested optimized enumeration can determine if this request was understood and  
2453 honored by the service by examining the response message. An wsen:EnumerateResponse message  
2454 with optimized enumeration will include either or both the wsman:Items and wsman:EndOfSequence  
2455 elements.

2456 Clients concerned about the size of the initial response, irrespective of the number of items should use  
2457 the wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize mechanism in 3.2.

2458

2459

### 2460 5.3 Filter Interpretation

2461 In WS-Enumeration the Filter expression is constrained to be a Boolean predicate. To support ad hoc  
2462 queries including projections, WS-Management defines a wsman:Filter element of exactly the same form  
2463 as WS-Enumeration except that the filter expression is not constrained to be a Boolean predicate. This  
2464 allows the use of enumeration using existing query languages such as SQL and CQL which combine  
2465 predicate and projection information in the same syntax. The use of projections is defined by the filter  
2466 dialect, not by WS-Management.

```
2467 <wsman:Filter Dialect="xs:anyURI"?> xs:any </wsman:Filter>
```

2468 The Dialect attribute is OPTIONAL. When not specified it has an implied value of  
2469 "http://www.w3.org/TR/1999/REC-xpath-19991116". This dialect allows any full XPath expression or  
2470 subset to be used.

2471 The wsman:Filter element is a child of the wsen:Enumerate element.

2472 If the filter dialect used for the wsen:Enumerate message is XPath 1.0, the context node is the same as  
2473 that specified by WS-Enumeration.

2474 **R5.3-1:** If a service supports filtered enumeration using wsen:Filter, it MUST also support filtering  
2475 using wsman:Filter. This allows client stacks to always pick the wsman XML namespace for the  
2476 Filter element. Even though a service supports wsman:Filter, it is not required to support projections.

2477 **R5.3-2:** If a service supports filtered enumeration using wsman:Filter, it SHOULD also support  
2478 filtering using wsen:Filter. This allows clients coded to WS-Enumeration to interact with a WS-  
2479 Management service.

2480 **R5.3-3:** If a wsen:Enumerate request contains both wsen:Filter and wsman:Filter, the service MUST  
2481 return a wsen:CannotProcessFilter fault.

2482 Filters are generally intended to select entire XML infosets or "object" representations. However, most  
2483 query languages have both filtering and compositional capabilities in that they can return subsets of the  
2484 original representation, or perform complex operations on the original representation and return  
2485 something entirely new.

2486 This specification places no restriction on the capabilities of the service, but services may elect to provide  
2487 only simple filtering capability and no compositional capabilities. In general, filtering dialects fall into the  
2488 following simple hierarchy:

- 2489 1) Simple enumeration with no filtering
- 2490 2) Filtered enumeration with no representation change (within the capabilities of XPath, for  
2491 example)
- 2492 3) Filtered enumeration in which a subset is selected (within the capabilities of XPath, for example)
- 2493 4) Composition of new output (XQuery), including simple projection

2494 Most services will fall into (1) or (2). However, if a service wishes to support fragment-level enumeration  
2495 to complement fragment-level WS-Transfer (section 4.8), then the service should implement (3) as well.  
2496 Only rarely will services implement (4).

## Web Services for Management

2497 Note that XPath 1.0 can be used simply for filtering, or may be used to send back subsets of the  
2498 representation (or even the values without XML wrappers). In cases where the result is not just filtered  
2499 but also "altered", the technique in section 5.6 applies.

2500 If full XPath cannot be supported, a common subset for this purpose is described in section 13.2 of this  
2501 specification.

2502 A typical example of the use of XPath in a filter is shown below. Assume each item in the enumeration to  
2503 be delivered has the following XML content:

2504

```
2505 <s:Body>
2506   ...
2507   <wsen:Items>
2508     <DiskInfo xmlns="...">
2509       <LogicalDisk>C:</LogicalDisk>
2510       <CurrentMegabytes>12</CurrentMegabytes>
2511       <BackupDrive> true </BackupDrive>
2512     </DiskInfo>
2513     ...
2514   </wsen:Items>
2515 </s:Body>
```

2516 The anchor point for the XPath evaluation is at the first element of each item within the wsen:Items  
2517 wrapper, and it does not reference the <s:Body> or <wsen:Items> elements as such. The XPath is  
2518 evaluated as if each item in the wsen:Items block were a separate document.

2519 When used for simple document processing, the following two XPath expressions would both "select" the  
2520 entire <DiskInfo> node:

2521

```
2522 ../DiskInfo
2523 ----- OR -----
2524 .
```

2525 If used as a "filter", this XPath does not filter out any instances and is the same as selecting all  
2526 instances, or omitting the filter entirely. However, using the following syntax, the XPath only selects the  
2527 XML node if the test expression in brackets evaluates to logical "true":

2528

```
2529 ../DiskInfo[LogicalDisk="C:"]
```

2530 In this case, the item must refer to disk drive "C:" or the XML node is not selected. This XPath filters out  
2531 all <DiskInfo> instances for other drives. Full XPath implementations may support more complex test  
2532 expressions as follows:

2533

```
2534 ../DiskInfo[CurrentMegabytes>"10" and CurrentMegabytes <"200"]
```

2535 This action selects only drives with free space within the range of values specified.

2536 In essence, the XML form of the event passes logically through the XPath processor to see if it would be  
2537 selected. If so, it is delivered in the enumeration. If not, the item is discarded and not delivered as part of  
2538 the enumeration.

2539 See the related section 7.2.2 on filtering over WS-Eventing subscriptions.

2540

## 2541 5.4 WS-Enumeration:Pull

2542 The wsen:Pull message continues an enumeration, that is, it retrieves batches of results from the initial  
2543 wsen:Enumerate.

2544 Since wsen:Pull allows the client to specify a wide range of batching and timing parameters, it is often  
2545 advisable for the client to know the valid ranges ahead of time. This should be exported from the service  
2546 in the form of metadata, which is beyond the scope of this specification. No message-based negotiation  
2547 is available for discovering the valid ranges of the parameters.

2548 In general, since wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize size can be requested for any response in WS-Management,  
2549 wsen:MaxCharacters is generally redundant and preferably is omitted from the wsen:Pull message, with  
2550 wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize used instead. However, if present, it has the following characteristics:

2551 **R5.4-1:** If a service is exposing enumeration and supports wsen:Pull with the  
2552 wsen:MaxCharacters element, the service SHOULD implement this as a  
2553 general guideline or hint, but MAY ignore it if wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize is  
2554 present, since that takes precedence. The service SHOULD NOT fault in  
2555 the case of a conflict but SHOULD observe the wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize  
2556 value.

2557 **R5.4-2:** If a service is exposing enumeration and supports wsen:Pull with the  
2558 wsen:MaxCharacters element, and a single response element would cause  
2559 the limit to be exceeded, the service MAY return the single element in  
2560 violation of the hint. However, the service MUST NOT violate  
2561 wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize in any case.

2562 **R5.4-3:** If a wsen:PullResponse would violate the wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize  
2563 request, the service MUST return a wsman:EncodingLimit fault with a detail  
2564 code of one of the following:

- 2565 • <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/MaxEnvelopeSize> if the  
2566 client's requested maximum would have been exceeded
- 2567 • <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/ServiceEnvelopeLimit> if  
2568 the service's internal limit was exceeded

2569 In general, wsen:MaxCharacters is a hint, and wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize is a strict rule and may not be  
2570 exceeded.

2571 **R5.4-4:** If any fault occurs during a wsen:Pull, a compliant service SHOULD allow  
2572 the client to retry wsen:Pull with other parameters, such as a larger limit or  
2573 with no limit, and attempt to retrieve the items. The service SHOULD not  
2574 cancel the enumeration as a whole, but retain enough context to be able to  
2575 retry if the client so wishes. However, the service MAY cancel the  
2576 enumeration outright if an error occurs with a  
2577 wsen:InvalidEnumerationContext fault.

2578 Note that if a fault occurs with a wsen:Pull request, the service generally should not cancel the entire  
2579 enumeration, but should simply freeze the cursor and allow the client to try again.

2580 The EnumerationContext from only the latest response is considered to be valid. While the service may  
2581 return the same EnumerationContext values with each wsen:Pull, it is not required to do so and may in  
2582 fact change the EnumerationContext unpredictably.

2583 **R5.4-5:** A conformant service MAY ignore wsen:MaxTime if  
2584 wsman:OperationTimeout is also specified, as wsman:OperationTimeout  
2585 takes precedence. These have precisely the same meaning and may be  
2586 used interchangeably. If both are used, the service SHOULD only observe

## Web Services for Management

2587 the wsman:OperationTimeout.

2588 Clients should omit wsen:MaxTime and use only wsman:OperationTimeout and should use  
2589 wman:MaxEnvelopeSize in preference to wsen:MaxCharacters.

2590 Note that any fault issued for wsen:Pull applies to the wsen:Pull itself, not the underlying enumeration that  
2591 is in progress. The most recent EnumerationContext is still considered valid, and the service should try to  
2592 allow a retry of the most recent wsen:Pull so that the client can continue. However, the service may  
2593 terminate (as specified in R5.3-3) early upon encountering any kind of problem.

2594 **R5.4-6:** The service MUST accept a wsen:Pull message with an endpoint reference  
2595 identical to that specified for the original wsen:Enumerate. A  
2596 wsa:MessageInformationHeaderRequired fault SHOULD be returned if the  
2597 EPR is missing or different.

2598 If no content is available, the enumerator is still considered active and the Pull may be retried:

2599 **R5.4-7:** If a service cannot populate the wsen:PullResponse with any items before  
2600 the timeout, it SHOULD return a wsman:TimedOut fault to indicate that true  
2601 timeout conditions occur and that the client is not likely to succeed by  
2602 simply issuing another wsen:Pull. If the service is only waiting for results at  
2603 the point of the timeout, it SHOULD return a response with no items and an  
2604 updated wsen:EnumerationContext, which MAY have changed, even  
2605 though no items were returned, as follows:  
2606

```
2607 (1) ...  
2608 (2) <s:Body>  
2609 (3)   <wsen:PullResponse>  
2610 (4)     <wsen:EnumerationContext> ...possibly updated... </wsen:EnumerationContext>  
2611 (5)     <wsen:Items/>  
2612 (6)   </wsen:PullResponse>  
2613 (7) </s:Body>  
2614 (8)
```

2615 An empty wsen:Items block is essentially a directive from the service to try again. If the service faults with  
2616 a wsman:TimedOut fault, it implies that a retry is not likely to succeed. Typically, the service will know  
2617 which one to return based on its internal state. For example, on the very first wsen:Pull if the service is  
2618 waiting for another component, then a wman:TimedOut fault may be likely. If the enumeration is  
2619 continuing with no problem and after 50 requests a particular wsen:Pull times out, the service may simply  
2620 send back zero items in the expectation that the client should continue with another wsen:Pull.

2621 **R5.4-8:** The service MAY terminate the entire enumeration early at any time, in  
2622 which case a wsen:InvalidEnumerationContext fault is returned. No further  
2623 operations are possible, including wsen:Release. In specific cases, such  
2624 as internal errors or responses which are too large, other faults may also be  
2625 returned. In all such cases, the service SHOULD invalidate the  
2626 enumeration context as well.

2627 **R5.4-9:** If the wsen:EndOfSequence marker occurs in the wsen:PullResponse, then  
2628 the wsen:EnumerationContext MUST be omitted, as the enumeration has  
2629 completed. The client does not need to subsequently issue a  
2630 wsen:Release.

2631 Normally, the end of an enumeration in all cases is reported by the wsen:EndOfSequence element being  
2632 present in the wsen:PullResponse content, not through faults. If the client attempts to enumerate past the  
2633 end of an enumeration, a wsen:InvalidEnumerationContext fault is returned. The client should not issue a

2634 wsen:Release if the wsen:EndOfSequence actually occurs, as the enumeration is then completed and the  
2635 enumeration context is invalid.

2636 **R5.4-10:** If no wsen:MaxElements is specified, the batch size is 1, as specified in  
2637 WS-Enumeration.

2638 **R5.4-11:** If wsen:MaxElements is larger than the service supports, the service MAY  
2639 ignore the value and use any default maximum of its own.

2640 The service should export its maximum wsen:MaxElements value in metadata, but the format and  
2641 location of such metadata is beyond the scope of this specification.

2642 **R5.4-12:** The wsen:EnumerationContext MUST be present in all wsen:Pull requests,  
2643 even if the service uses a constant value for the lifetime of the enumeration  
2644 sequence. This is mandated by WS-Enumeration and repeated here for  
2645 clarity.

### 2646 **5.5 WS-Enumeration:Release**

2647 As previously stated, wsen:Release MUST be implemented. It is only used to perform an early  
2648 cancellation of the enumeration.

2649 In cases where it is not actually needed, the implementation can expose a dummy implementation which  
2650 always succeeds. This promotes completely uniform client-side messaging.

2651 **R5.5-1:** The service MUST recognize and process the wsen:Release message if  
2652 the enumeration is terminated early. Note that if a wsen:EndOfSequence  
2653 marker occurs in a wsen:PullResponse, the enumerator is already  
2654 completed and a wsen:Release cannot be issued, as there is no up-to-date  
2655 wsen:EnumerationContext to use.

2656 **R5.5-2:** The client may fail to deliver the wsen:Release in a timely fashion or may  
2657 never send it. A conformant service MAY terminate the enumeration after a  
2658 suitable idle time has expired, and any attempt to reuse the enumeration  
2659 context MUST result in a wsen:InvalidEnumerationContext fault.

2660 **R5.5-3:** The service MUST accept a wsen:Release message with an endpoint  
2661 reference identical to that specified for the original wsen:Enumerate,  
2662 assuming the enumeration is still active and the wsen:EndOfSequence has  
2663 not occurred. A wsa:MessageInformationHeaderRequired fault SHOULD  
2664 be returned if the EPR is missing or different.

2665 **R5.5-4:** The service MAY accept a wsen:Release asynchronously to any wsen:Pull  
2666 requests already in progress and cancel the enumeration. The service  
2667 MAY refuse such an asynchronous request and fault it with a  
2668 wsman:UnsupportedFeature fault with a detail code of  
2669 <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/AsynchronousR>  
2670 equest. The service may also queue or block the request and serialize it so  
2671 that it is processed after the wsen:Pull.

2672 In most cases, it is desirable to be able to asynchronously cancel an outstanding wsen:Pull. This  
2673 capability requires the service to be able to receive the wsen:Release asynchronously while still  
2674 processing a pending wsen:Pull. Further, it requires that the EnumerationContext contain information  
2675 which is constant between wsen:Pull operations. Note that if the EnumerationContext is a simple  
2676 increasing integer, wsen:Release will always be using a previous value, so the service might consider it to  
2677 be invalid. If the EnumerationContext contains a value which is constant across wsen:Pull requests (as  
2678 well as any other information that the service might need), the service can more easily implement the  
2679 cancellation.

### 2680 5.6 Ad-Hoc Queries and Fragment-Level Enumerations

2681 As discussed in section 4.8, it is desirable that clients be able to access subsets of a representation. This  
2682 is especially important in the area of query processing, where users routinely wish to execute XPath or  
2683 XQuery operations over the representation to receive ad-hoc results.

2684 Since SOAP messages must conform to known schemas, and since ad-hoc queries return results which  
2685 are dynamically generated and may conform to no schema, the wsman:XmlFragment wrapper from  
2686 section 4.8 must be used to wrap the responses.

2687 **R5.6-1:** The service MAY support ad-hoc compositional queries, projections, or  
2688 enumerations of fragments of the representation objects by supplying a  
2689 suitable dialect in the wsman:Filter. The resulting set of Items in the  
2690 wsen:PullResponse (or wsen:EnumerateResponse if  
2691 OptimizedEnumeration is used) SHOULD be wrapped with  
2692 wsman:XmlFragment wrappers as follows:  
2693

```
2694 <?xml version="1.0" ...>
2695 <s:Body>
2696 <wsen:PullResponse>
2697 <wsen:EnumerationContext> ...possibly updated... </wsen:EnumerationContext>
2698 <wsen:Items>
2699 <wsman:XmlFragment>
2700 <XML content
2701 </wsman:XmlFragment>
2702 <wsman:XmlFragment>
2703 <XML content
2704 </wsman:XmlFragment>
2705 ...etc.
2706 </wsen:Items>
2707 </wsen:PullResponse>
2708 </s:Body>
```

2709 The schema for wsman:XmlFragment contains a directive to suppress schema validation, allowing a  
2710 validating parser to accept ad-hoc content produced by the query processor acting behind the  
2711 enumeration.

2712 Note that XPath 1.0 and XQuery 1.0 already support returning subsets or compositions of  
2713 representations, so they are suitable for use in this regard.

2714 **R5.6-2:** If the service does not support fragment-level enumeration, it should return  
2715 a wsen:FilterDialectRequestedUnavailable fault, the same as for any other  
2716 unsupported dialect.

2717 Note that the XPath expression used for filtering is still that described in WS-Enumeration. The  
2718 wsman:XmlFragment wrappers are applied after the XPath is evaluated to prevent schema violations if  
2719 the XPath selects node sets which are fragments and not legal according to the original schema.

### 2720 5.7 Enumeration of EPRs

2721 Typically, inferring the EPR of an enumerated object simply by inspection is not possible. In many cases,  
2722 it is desirable to enumerate the endpoint references of objects rather than the objects themselves. Such  
2723 EPRs should be usable in subsequent wxf:Get or wxf>Delete requests, for example. Similarly, it is often  
2724 desirable to enumerate both the objects and the associated endpoint references.

2725 The default behavior for wsen:Enumerate is as defined in the WS-Enumeration specification. However,  
2726 WS-Management provides an additional extension for controlling the output of the enumeration.

2727 **R5.7-1:** A service MAY optionally support the wsman:EnumerationMode modifier  
2728 element with a value of **EnumerateEPR**, which returns only the EPRs of  
2729 the objects as the result of the enumeration.

2730 Here is an example:

2731

2732

2733

2734

2735

2736

2737

2738

2739

2740

2741

2742

2743

2744

2745

```

X
X <s:Header>
X   ...
X   <wsa:Action>
X     http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/enumeration/Enumerate
X   </wsa:Action>
X   ...
X
X <s:Body>
X   <wsen:Enumerate>
X     <wsman:Filter Dialect="..."> filter </wsman:Filter>
X     <wsman:EnumerationMode> EnumerateEPR </wsman:EnumerationMode>
X     ...
X

```

2746 The filter, if any, is still applied to the enumeration, but the response contains only the EPRs of the items  
2747 that would have been returned. These EPRs are intended for use in subsequent wxf:Get operations.

2748 The hypothetical response would appear as follows:

2749

2750

2751

2752

2753

2754

2755

2756

2757

2758

```

X <s:Body>
X   <wsen:PullResponse>
X     <wsen:Items>
X       <wsa:EndpointReference> ... </wsa:EndpointReference>
X       <wsa:EndpointReference> ... </wsa:EndpointReference>
X       <wsa:EndpointReference> ... </wsa:EndpointReference>
X       ...
X     </wsen:Items>
X   </wsen:PullResponse>

```

2759 **R5.7-2:** A service MAY optionally support the wsman:EnumerationMode modifier  
2760 with the value of **EnumerateObjectAndEPR**. If present, the enumerated  
2761 objects are wrapped in a wsman:Item which juxtaposes two XML  
2762 representations: the payload representation followed by the associated  
2763 wsa:EndpointReference.

2764 As an example, the wsman:EnumerationMode header appears as follows:

2765

2766

2767

2768

2769

2770

2771

```

X <s:Header>
X   ...
X   <wsa:Action>
X     http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/enumeration/Enumerate
X   </wsa:Action>
X

```

## Web Services for Management

```
2772 <s:Body>
2773   <wsen:Enumerate>
2774     <wsman:Filter Dialect="..."> filter </wsman:Filter>
2775     <wsman:EnumerationMode> EnumerateObjectAndEPR </wsman:EnumerationMode>
2776     ...
```

2777 The response appears as follows:

```
2778
2779 <s:Body>
2780   <wsen:PullResponse>
2781     <wsen:Items>
2782       <wsman:Item>
2783         <PayloadObject xmlns="..."> ... </PayloadObject> <!-- Object -->
2784         <wsa:EndpointReference> ... </wsa:EndpointReference> <!-- EPR -->
2785       </wsman:Item>
2786       <wsman:Item>
2787         <PayloadObject xmlns="..."> ... </PayloadObject> <!-- Object -->
2788         <wsa:EndpointReference> ... </wsa:EndpointReference> <!-- EPR -->
2789       </wsman:Item>
2790       ...
2791     </wsen:Items>
2792   </wsen:PullResponse>
```

2793 In the above example, each item is wrapped in a `wsman:Item` wrapper (line 46), which itself contains the  
2794 representation object (47) followed by its EPR (48). As many `wsman:Item` objects may be present as is  
2795 consistent with other encoding limitations.

2796 **R5.7-3:** If a service does not support the `wsman:EnumerationMode` modifier, it  
2797 MUST return a fault of `wsman:UnsupportedFeature` with a detail code of  
2798 `http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/EnumerationMo`  
2799 `de`.

## 2800 6 Custom Actions (Methods)

### 2801 6.1 General

2802 Custom actions or "methods" are ordinary SOAP messages with unique Actions. An implementation may  
2803 support resource-specific methods in any form, subject to the addressing model and restrictions  
2804 described in section 2.0 of this specification.

2805 **R6.1-1:** A conformant service is NOT REQUIRED to expose any custom actions or  
2806 methods.

2807 **R6.1-2:** If custom methods are exported, WS-Addressing rules as described  
2808 elsewhere in this specification MUST be observed and each custom  
2809 method MUST have a unique `wsa:Action`.

2810 A custom method must be a dedicated WS-Addressing Action URI directed to a specific Resource and  
2811 may not be described using a `wsa:To` address alone.

2812 In general, Options should not be used to implement custom methods or in combination with them, since  
2813 options are a parameterization technique for message types which are not user-extensible, such as WS-  
2814 Transfer. Custom methods defined in WSDL expose any required parameters and thus expose naming  
2815 and type checking in a stringent way, so mixing Options with parameters is likely to lead to confusion.

2816

2817 **7 Eventing**2818 **7.1 General**

2819 If the service can emit events, then it should publish those events using WS-Eventing messaging and  
 2820 paradigms. WS-Management places additional restrictions and constraints on the general WS-Eventing  
 2821 specification.

2822

2823 **R7.1-1:** If a Resource can emit events and allows clients to subscribe to and receive event  
 2824 messages, it **MUST** do so by implementing WS-Eventing as specified in this specification.

2825

2826 **R7.1-2:** If WS-Eventing is supported, the Subscribe, Renew, and Unsubscribe messages **MUST** be  
 2827 supported. SubscriptionEnd is **OPTIONAL**, and GetStatus is **NOT RECOMMENDED**.

2828 **7.2 Subscribe**2829 **7.2.1 General**

2830 WS-Management uses wse:Subscribe substantially as documented in WS-Eventing, except that the WS-  
 2831 Management endpoint reference model is incorporated as described in section 2.1.

2832

2833 **R7.2.1-1:** The identity of the event source **MUST** be based on the WS-Addressing endpoint  
 2834 reference.

2835

2836 **R7.2.1-2:** A service is **NOT REQUIRED** to support distinct addresses and distinct security settings  
 2837 for NotifyTo and EndTo, and **MAY** require that these be the same network address, although they  
 2838 **MAY** have separate reference parameters in all cases. If the service cannot support the requested  
 2839 addressing, it **SHOULD** return a wsman:UnsupportedFeature fault with a detail code of  
 2840 <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/AddressingMode>.

2841 The service should verify that the address will actually be usable. For example, if the address cannot be  
 2842 reached due to firewall configuration and the service can detect this, then it should issue a fault.

2843

2844 **R7.2.1-3:** Because many delivery modes require a separate connection to deliver the event, the  
 2845 service **SHOULD** comply with the security profiles defined in section 9 of this specification, if HTTP  
 2846 or HTTPS is used to deliver events. If no security is specified, the service **MAY** attempt to use default  
 2847 security mechanisms, or return a wse:UnsupportedFeature fault with a detail code of  
 2848 <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InsecureAddress>.

2849 Since clients may need to have client-side context sent back with each event delivery, the wse:NotifyTo  
 2850 address in the wse:Delivery block should be used for this purpose. This wse:NotifyTo operation may  
 2851 contain any number of client-defined reference parameters.

2852

2853 **R7.2.1-4:** A service **MAY** validate the address by attempting a connection while the wse:Subscribe  
 2854 request is being processed to ensure delivery can occur successfully. If the service determines the  
 2855 address is not valid or permissions cannot be acquired, it should emit a  
 2856 wse:EventSourceUnableToProcess fault with a detail code of  
 2857 <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/UnusableAddress>.

## Web Services for Management

2858 This can occur either when the address is incorrect or if the event source cannot acquire permissions to  
2859 deliver events properly.

2860  
2861 **R7.2.1-5:** A service is REQUIRED to deliver any reference parameters in the wse:NotifyTo address  
2862 with each event delivery as specified in section 2.2 of this specification. If EndTo is supported, this  
2863 behavior applies as well.

2864 When the default addressing model is in use by the service, the ResourceURI is often used to reference  
2865 the logical event source, and Selector values may additionally be used to indicate a real or virtual log  
2866 within the scope of that source, or might even be used to limit the types or groups of events available.  
2867 This logically can overlap with the Filter mechanism in the subscription body itself, so due consideration  
2868 must be given to the interplay between the address of the event source, the types of events it can publish,  
2869 and the subscription-level filtering.

2870 If a client needs to have events delivered to more than one destination, more than one subscription is  
2871 required.

2872  
2873 **R7.2.1-6:** If the events contain localized content, the service SHOULD accept a subscription with a  
2874 wsman:Locale block acting as a "hint" (see section 3.3) within the wse:Delivery block of the  
2875 wse:Subscribe message. The language is encoded in an xml:lang attribute using RFC 3066  
2876 language codes. The service SHOULD attempt to localize any descriptive content to the specified  
2877 language when delivering such events, as follows:  
2878

```
2879 (1) <wse:Subscribe>  
2880 (2)   <wse:Delivery>  
2881 (3)     <wse:NotifyTo> ... </wse:NotifyTo>  
2882 (4)     <wsman:Locale xml:lang="language-code"/>  
2883 (5)   </wse:Delivery>  
2884 (6) </wse:Subscribe>
```

2885 In this context, note that the wsman:Locale (already defined in section 3.3) is not a SOAP header and  
2886 mustUnderstand cannot be used.

2887  
2888 **R7.2.1-7:** The service SHOULD accept a subscription with a wsman:Content-Encoding block within  
2889 the wse:DeliveryBlock of the wse:Subscribe message. This block acts as a hint to indicate how the  
2890 delivered events should be encoded. The two standard xs:language tokens defined for this purpose  
2891 are "UTF-8" or "UTF-16", although other encoding formats may be specified if necessary. The  
2892 service SHOULD attempt to encode the events using the requested, as in the following example:  
2893

```
2894 (7) <wse:Subscribe>  
2895 (8)   <wse:Delivery>  
2896 (9)     ...  
2897 (10)  <wse:NotifyTo> ... </wse:NotifyTo>  
2898 (11)  <wsman:ContentEncoding> UTF-16 </wsman:ContentEncoding>  
2899 (12) </wse:Delivery>  
2900 (13) </wse:Subscribe>
```

2901

2902

2903 **7.2.2 Filtering**

2904 In WS-Eventing the Filter expression is constrained to be a Boolean predicate. To support ad hoc  
 2905 queries including projections, WS-Management defines a wsman:Filter element of exactly the same form  
 2906 as WS-Eventing except that the filter expression is not constrained to be a Boolean predicate. This  
 2907 allows the use of subscriptions using existing query languages such as SQL and CQL which combine  
 2908 predicate and projection information in the same syntax. The use of projections is defined by the filter  
 2909 dialect, not by WS-Management.

```
2910 <wsman:Filter Dialect="xs:anyURI"?> xs:any </wsman:Filter>
```

2911 The Dialect attribute is OPTIONAL. When not specified it has an implied value of  
 2912 "http://www.w3.org/TR/1999/REC-xpath-19991116". This dialect allows any full XPath expression or  
 2913 subset to be used.

2914 The wsman:Filter element is a child of the wse:Subscribe element.

2915 If the filter dialect used for the wsen:Subscribe message is "http://www.w3.org/TR/1999/REC-xpath-  
 2916 19991116", the context node is the same as that specified by WS-Eventing (the SOAP Envelope  
 2917 element).

2918 **R7.2.2-1:** If a service supports filtered subscriptions using wse:Filter, it MUST also support filtering  
 2919 using wsman:Filter. This allows client stacks to always pick the wsman XML namespace for the  
 2920 Filter element. Even though a service supports wsman:Filter, it is not required to support projections.

2921 **R7.2.2-2:** If a service supports filtered subscriptions using wsman:Filter, it SHOULD also support  
 2922 filtering using wse:Filter. This allows clients coded to WS-Eventing to interact with a WS-  
 2923 Management service.

2924 **R7.2.2-3:** If a wse:Subscribe request contains both wse:Filter and wsman:Filter, the service MUST  
 2925 return a wse:InvalidMessage fault.

2926 The default wse:Filter dialect as defined by WS-Eventing is http://www.w3.org/TR/1999/REC-xpath-  
 2927 19991116, which is XPath 1.0. However, this defines the context node as being the SOAP Envelope. In  
 2928 order to allow eventing filter expressions to be defined independent of the delivery mode, WS-  
 2929 Management defines a new filter dialect that is the same as defined by WS-Eventing except the context  
 2930 node is defined as being the element that would be returned as the first child of the SOAP Body element  
 2931 if the Push DeliveryMode were used. The URI for this filter dialect is:  
 2932 **http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/filter/eventRootXPath**. The context node for this  
 2933 expression is:

2934 • Context Node: any XML element that could be returned as a direct child of the s:Body element if  
 2935 the wsman:DeliveryMode was Push.

2936 • Context Position: 1.

2937 • Context Size: 1.

2938 • Variable Bindings: None.

2939 • Function Libraries: Core Function Library [XPath 1.0].

2940 • Namespace Declarations: The [in-scope namespaces] property [XML Infoset] of  
 2941 /s:Envelope/s:Body/wse:Subscribe/wsman:Filter.

2942

2943 **R7.2.2-4:** Services SHOULD support this filter dialect when they want to use an XPath based filter,  
 2944 rather than the default filter dialect defined by WS-Eventing.

## Web Services for Management

2945

2946 The considerations described in section 5.3 regarding the XPath 1.0 filter dialect also apply to the  
2947 eventing filter just described.

2948 Resource-constrained implementations may have difficulty providing full XPath processing and yet still  
2949 wish to use a subset of XPath syntax. This does not require the addition of a new dialect as long as the  
2950 expression specified in the filter is a true XPath expression. The use of the filter dialect URI does not  
2951 imply that the service supports the entire specification for that dialect, only that the expression conforms  
2952 to the rules of that dialect. Most services will use XPath only for filtering, but will not support the  
2953 composition of new XML or removing portions of XML which would result in the XML fragment violating  
2954 the schema of the event.

2955 A typical example of the use of XPath in a subscription follows. Assume each event that would be  
2956 delivered has the following XML content:  
2957

```
2958 <s:Body>  
2959   <LowDiskSpaceEvent xmlns="...">  
2960     <LogicalDisk>C:</LogicalDisk>  
2961     <CurrentMegabytes>12</CurrentMegabytes>  
2962     <Megabytes24HoursAgo>17</Megabytes24HoursAgo>  
2963   </LowDiskSpaceEvent>  
2964 </s:Body>
```

2965 Note that the event is wholly contained within the s:Body of the SOAP message. The anchor point for the  
2966 XPath evaluation is the first element within the s:Body, and does not reference the <s:Body> element as  
2967 such. The XPath is evaluated as if the content were a separate XML document.

2968 When used for simple document processing, the following two XPath expressions would both "select" the  
2969 entire <LowDiskSpaceEvent> node:  
2970

```
2971 ../LowDiskSpaceEvent  
2972 ----- OR -----  
2973 .
```

2974 If used as a "filter", this XPath does not filter out any instances and is the same as selecting all instances  
2975 of the event, or omitting the filter entirely. However, using the following syntax, the XPath only selects the  
2976 XML node if the test expression in brackets evaluates to logical "true":  
2977

```
2978 ../LowDiskSpaceEvent[LogicalDisk="C:"]
```

2979 In this case, the event must refer to disk drive "C:" or the XML node is not selected. This XPath would  
2980 filter out all <LowDiskSpaceEvent> events for other drives. Full XPath implementations may support  
2981 more complex test expressions:  
2982

```
2983 ../LowDiskSpaceEvent[LogicalDisk="C:" and CurrentMegabytes < "20"]
```

2984 In essence, the XML form of the event is logically passed through the XPath processor to see if it would  
2985 be selected. If so, it is delivered as an event. If not, the event is discarded and not delivered to the  
2986 subscriber.

2987 Note that XPath 1.0 can be used simply for filtering, or may be used to send back subsets of the  
2988 representation (or even the values without XML wrappers). In cases where the result is not just filtered  
2989 but is "altered", the technique in section 5.6 applies.

2990 If full XPath cannot be supported, a common subset for this purpose is described in Chapter 12 of this  
 2991 specification.

2992 **R7.2.2-5:** The wsman:Filter element MUST contain either simple text or a single  
 2993 XML element of a single or complex type. A service SHOULD reject any  
 2994 filter with mixed content or multiple peer XML elements using a  
 2995 wse:EventSourceUnableToProcess fault.

2996 **R7.2.2-6:** A conformant service is NOT REQUIRED to support the entire syntax  
 2997 and processing power of the specified filter dialect. The only requirement is  
 2998 that the specified filter is syntactically correct within the definition of the  
 2999 dialect. Subsets are therefore legal. If the specified filter exceeds the  
 3000 capability of the service, a wse:EventSourceUnableToProcess fault  
 3001 SHOULD be returned with text explaining why the filter was problematic.

3002 **R7.2.2-7:** If a service requires complex initialization parameters in addition to the  
 3003 filter, these SHOULD be part of the wsman:Filter block as they logically  
 3004 form part of the filter initialization, even if some of the parameters are not  
 3005 strictly used in the filtering process. In this case, a unique dialect URI  
 3006 MUST be devised for the event source and the schema and usage  
 3007 published.

3008 **R7.2.2-8:** If the service supports composition of new XML or filtering to the point  
 3009 where the resultant event would not conform to the original schema for that  
 3010 event, the event delivery SHOULD be wrapped in the same way as content  
 3011 for fragment-level transfer (section 4.8 of this specification).

3012 Note that events, regardless of how they are filtered or reduced, must conform to some kind of XML  
 3013 schema definition when they are actually delivered. Simply sending out unwrapped XML fragments  
 3014 during delivery is not legal.

3015 **R7.2.2-9:** If the service requires specific initialization XML in addition to the filter to  
 3016 formulate a subscription, this initialization XML MUST form part of the filter  
 3017 body and be documented as part of the filter dialect.

3018 This promotes a consistent location for initialization content, which may be logically seen as part of the  
 3019 filter anyway. The filter XML schema should cleanly separate the initialization and filtering parts into  
 3020 separate XML elements.

3021 See the related section 5.3 on filtering over WS-Enumeration.

### 3022 7.2.3 Connection Retries

3023 Due to the nature of event delivery, at event-time the subscriber may not be reachable. Rather than  
 3024 terminate all subscriptions immediately, typically the service will attempt to connect several times with  
 3025 suitable timeouts before giving up.

3026 **R7.2.3-1:** A service MAY observe any connection retry policy, or allow the  
 3027 subscriber to define it by including the following wsman:ConnectionRetry  
 3028 instruction in a subscription. The service is NOT REQUIRED to accept  
 3029 wsman:ConnectionRetry and may return a wsman:UnsupportedFeature  
 3030 fault with a detail code of  
 3031 <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/DeliveryRetries>.  
 3032 This only applies to failures to *connect* and does not include replay of  
 3033 actual SOAP deliveries:  
 3034

```
3035 ❯ <wse:Subscribe>
3036 ❯ <wse:Delivery>
```

## Web Services for Management

```
3037 <wse:NotifyTo> ... </wse:NotifyTo>
3038 <wsman:ConnectionRetry Total="count"> xs:duration </wsman:ConnectionRetry>
3039 </wse:Delivery>
3040 </wse:Subscribe>
```

3041 The following describes additional, normative constraints on the outline listed above:

3042 wsman:ConnectionRetry

3043 An xs:interval for how long to wait between retries while trying to connect.

3044 wsman:ConnectionRetry/@Total

3045 How many retries to attempt, observing the above interval between the attempts.

3046 **R7.2.3-2:** If the retry counts are exhausted, the subscription SHOULD be  
3047 considered expired and any normal operations that would occur upon  
3048 expiration should occur.

3049 Note that the retry mechanism only applies to attempts to connect. Failures to deliver on an established  
3050 connection should result in terminating the connection according to the rules of the transport in use, and  
3051 terminating the subscription. Other Web services mechanisms can be used to synthesize reliable  
3052 delivery or safe replay of the actual deliveries.

### 3053 7.2.4 wse:SubscribeResponse

3054 The service returns any service-specific reference parameters in the wse:SubscriptionManager endpoint  
3055 reference, and these must be used by the subscriber (client) later when issuing Unsubscribe and Renew  
3056 messages.

3057 **R7.2.4-1:** In the wse:SubscribeResponse, the service MAY specify any EPR for  
3058 the wse:SubscriptionManager. However, it is RECOMMENDED that the  
3059 address contain the same wsa:To address as the original wse:Subscribe  
3060 request and differ only in other parts of the address, such as the reference  
3061 parameters.

3062 **R7.2.4-2:** A conformant service is NOT REQUIRED to return the wsen:Expires  
3063 field in the response, but as specified in WS-Eventing, this implies the  
3064 subscription does not expire until explicitly canceled.

### 3065 7.2.5 Heartbeats

3066 A typical problem with event subscriptions is a situation in which no event traffic occurs. It is difficult for  
3067 clients to know whether no events matching the subscription have occurred or whether the subscription  
3068 has simply failed and the client was not able to receive any notification.

3069 Because of this, WS-Management defines a "heartbeat" pseudo-event which can be sent periodically for  
3070 any subscription. This event is sent if no regular events occur so that the client knows the subscription is  
3071 still active. Should the heartbeat event not arrive, then the client knows that connectivity is bad or that the  
3072 subscription has expired and it may take corrective action.

3073 The heartbeat event is sent *in place of* the events that would have occurred and is *never* intermixed with  
3074 "real" events. In all modes, including batched, it occurs alone.

3075 To request heartbeat events as part of a subscription, the wse:Subscribe request has an additional field in  
3076 the wse:Delivery section:

```
3077
3078 (1) <wse:Delivery>
3079 (2) ...
```

```

3080 (3) <wsman:Heartbeats> xs:duration </wsman:Heartbeats>
3081 (4) ...
3082 (5) </wse:Delivery>

```

3083 The following describes additional, normative constraints on the outline listed above:

3084 wsman:Heartbeats

3085 Specifies that heartbeat events are added to the event stream at the specified interval.

3086 **R7.2.5-1:** A service is NOT REQUIRED to support heartbeat events, but  
 3087 SHOULD do so. If the service does not support them, a  
 3088 wsman:UnsupportedFeature fault with a detail code of  
 3089 http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/Heartbeats  
 3090 MUST be returned to the client. Heartbeats apply to all delivery modes.

3091 Heartbeats apply to "pull" mode deliveries as well, in that they are a hint to the publisher about how often  
 3092 to expect a wsen:Pull request. The service may refuse to deliver events if the client does not regularly  
 3093 call back at the heartbeat interval. If no events are available at the heartbeat interval, the service simply  
 3094 includes a heartbeat event as the result of the wsen:Pull.

3095 **R7.2.5-2:** While a subscription with heartbeats is active, the service MUST ensure  
 3096 that either real events or heartbeats are sent out within the specified  
 3097 wsman:Heartbeat interval. The service MAY send out heartbeats at this  
 3098 interval, in addition to the events, due to colliding time windows and race  
 3099 conditions, as long as the heartbeat events are sent separately (not  
 3100 batched with other events). The goal is to ensure that some kind of event  
 3101 traffic always occurs within the heartbeat interval.

3102 **R7.2.5-3:** A conformant service MAY send out heartbeats at earlier intervals than  
 3103 specified in the subscription. However, the events should NOT be  
 3104 intermixed with other events when batching delivery modes are used.  
 3105 Typically, heartbeats are sent out *only when no real events occur*. It is  
 3106 NOT A REQUIREMENT for a service to fail to produce heartbeats at the  
 3107 specified interval if real events have been delivered.

3108 **R7.2.5-4:** A conformant service MUST NOT send out heartbeats asynchronously  
 3109 to any event deliveries already in progress. They must be delivered in  
 3110 sequence like any other events, although they are delivered alone as single  
 3111 events or as the only event in a batch.

3112 In practice, heartbeat events are based on a countdown timer. If no events occur, the heartbeat is sent  
 3113 out alone. However, every time a real event is delivered, the heartbeat countdown timer is reset. If a  
 3114 steady stream of events occurs, heartbeats may never be delivered.

3115 Heartbeats need to be acknowledged like any other event.

3116 The client will assume that the subscription is no longer active if no heartbeats are received within the  
 3117 specified interval, so the service should proceed to cancel the subscription and send any requested  
 3118 SubscriptionEnd messages, as the client will likely resubscribe shortly. Used in combination with  
 3119 bookmarks, heartbeats can achieve highly reliable delivery with known latency behavior.

3120 The heartbeat event itself is simply an event message with no body and is identified by its wsa:Action  
 3121 URI:

```

3122
3123 (1) s:Envelope ...>
3124 (2) <s:Header>
3125 (3) <wsa:To> .... </wsa:To>

```

## Web Services for Management

```
3126 (4) <wsa:Action s:mustUnderstand="true">
3127 (5)     http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/Heartbeat
3128 (6) </wsa:Action>
3129 (7) ...
3130 (8)
```

### 3131 7.2.6 Bookmarks

3132 Reliable delivery of events is difficult to achieve, so management subscribers should have a way to be  
3133 certain of receiving all events from a source. When subscriptions expire or when deliveries fail, windows  
3134 of time can occur in which the client cannot be certain whether critical events have occurred. Rather than  
3135 using a highly complex, transacted delivery model, WS-Management defines a simple mechanism for  
3136 ensuring that all events are delivered or that dropped events can be detected.

3137 For this to succeed, event sources must be backed by logs, whether short-term or long-term. The client  
3138 subscribes as normal for WS-Eventing, and specifies that bookmarks should be used. The service then  
3139 sends a new bookmark along with each event delivery, which the client is responsible for persisting. This  
3140 bookmark is essentially a context or a pointer to the logical event stream location that matches the  
3141 subscription filter. As each new delivery occurs, the client updates the bookmark in its own space. If the  
3142 subscription expires or is terminated unexpectedly, the client may subscribe again, using the last known  
3143 bookmark. In essence, the subscription filter identifies the desired set of events, and the bookmark tells  
3144 the service where to start in the log. The client may then pick up where it left off.

3145 Note that this mechanism is immune to transaction problems, because the client can simply start from  
3146 any of several recent bookmarks. The only requirement for the service is to have some type of persistent  
3147 log in which to apply the bookmark. If the submitted bookmark is too old (temporally or positionally within  
3148 the log), the service can fault the request, and at least the client reliably knows that events have been  
3149 dropped.

3150 **R7.2.6-1:** A conformant service is NOT REQUIRED to support the WS-  
3151 Management Bookmark mechanism. If the service does not support  
3152 bookmarks, it should return a wsman:UnsupportedFeature fault with a  
3153 detail code of  
3154 <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/Bookmarks>.

3155 To request bookmark services, the client includes the wsman:SendBookmarks element in the  
3156 wse:Subscribe request:

```
3157
3158 (1) <s:Body>
3159 (2)   <wse:Subscribe>
3160 (3)     <wse:Delivery>
3161 (4)       ...
3162 (5)     </wse:Delivery>
3163 (6)     <wsman:SendBookmarks/>
3164 (7)   </wse:Subscribe>
3165 (8) </s:Body>
```

3166 The following describes additional, normative constraints on the outline listed above:

#### 3167 wsman:SendBookmarks

3168 This is an element with no value that instructs the service to send a bookmark with each event  
3169 delivery. Bookmarks apply to all delivery modes.

3170 The bookmark is a token which represents an abstract pointer in the event stream, but whether it points to  
3171 the last delivered event or the last event plus one (the upcoming event) makes no difference since the

3172 token is supplied to the same implementation during a subsequent wse:Subscribe operation. The service  
 3173 may thus attach any service-specific meaning and structure to the bookmark with no change to the client.

3174 If bookmarks are requested, each event delivery contains a new bookmark value as a SOAP header. The  
 3175 format of the bookmark is entirely determined by the service and should be treated as an opaque value:  
 3176

```

3177 <s:Envelope
3178     xmlns:s="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope"
3179     xmlns:wsa="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing"
3180     xmlns:wsmn="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman.xsd">
3181   <s:Header>
3182     <wsa:To s:mustUnderstand="true">http://2.3.4.5/client</wsa:To>
3183     ...
3184     <wsman:Bookmark> xs:any </wsman:Bookmark>
3185     ...
3186   </s:Header>
3187   <s:Body>
3188     ...event content...
3189   </s:Body>
3190 </s:Envelope>
    
```

3191 The following describes additional, normative constraints on the outline listed above:

3192 wsman:Bookmark

3193 XML content supplied by the service which indicates the logical position of this event or event batch  
 3194 in the event stream implied by the subscription.

3195 **R7.2.6-2:** If bookmarks are supported, the wsman:Bookmark element content  
 3196 MUST be either simple text or a single complex XML element. A  
 3197 conformant service MUST NOT accept mixed content of both text and  
 3198 elements, or multiple peer XML elements under the wsman:Bookmark  
 3199 element.

3200 **R7.2.6-3:** If bookmarks are supported, the service MUST use a wsman:Bookmark  
 3201 element in the Header to send an updated bookmark with each event  
 3202 delivery. Bookmarks only accompany event deliveries and are not part of  
 3203 any SubscriptionEnd message.

3204 Once the subscription has terminated, for whatever reason, a subsequent wse:Subscribe on the part of  
 3205 the client may include the bookmark in the subscribe request. The service then knows where to start.  
 3206 The last-known bookmark received by the client is added to the wse:Subscribe message as a new block,  
 3207 positioned after the WS-Eventing-defined child elements of wse:Subscribe:  
 3208

```

3209 ...
3210 <s:Body>
3211   <wse:Subscribe>
3212     <wse:Delivery> ... </wse:Delivery>
3213     <wse:Expires> ... </wse:Expires>
3214     <wsman:Filter> ... </wsman:Filter>
3215     <wsman:Bookmark>
3216       ...last known bookmark from a previous delivery...
3217     </wsman:Bookmark>
3218     <wsman:SendBookmarks/>
3219   </wse:Subscribe>
    
```

## Web Services for Management

3220  </s:Body>

3221 The following describes additional, normative constraints on the outline listed above:

3222 wsman:Bookmark

3223 Arbitrary XML content previously supplied by the service as a wsman:Bookmark during event  
3224 deliveries from a previous subscription.

3225 wsman:SendBookmarks

3226 An instruction to continue delivering updated bookmarks with each event delivery.

3227 **R7.2.6-4:** The bookmark is a pointer to the last event delivery or batched delivery.  
3228 The service MUST resume delivery at the first event or events after the  
3229 event represented by the bookmark. The service MUST NOT replay events  
3230 associated with the bookmark or skip any events since the bookmark.

3231 **R7.2.6-5:** The service MAY support a short queue of previous bookmarks,  
3232 allowing the subscriber to start using any of several previous bookmarks. If  
3233 bookmarks are supported, the service is REQUIRED only to support the  
3234 most recent bookmark for which delivery had apparently succeeded.

3235 **R7.2.6-6:** If the bookmark cannot be honored, the service MUST fault with a  
3236 wsman:InvalidBookmark, with one of the following detail codes:

- 3237 • <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/Expired>: The bookmark  
3238 has expired (the source is not able to back up and replay from that point).
- 3239 • <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InvalidFormat>: The  
3240 format is unknown.

3241 If multiple new subscriptions are made using a previous bookmark, the  
3242 service MAY allow multiple reuse or MAY limit bookmarks to a single  
3243 subscriber, and may even restrict how long bookmarks may be used before  
3244 becoming invalid.

3245 A predefined, reserved bookmark value indicates that the subscription should start at the earliest possible  
3246 point in the event stream backed by the publisher:  
3247 **<http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/bookmark/earliest>**. If a subscription is received with  
3248 this bookmark, the event source should replay all possible events which match the filter and any events  
3249 which subsequently occur for that event source. Absence of any bookmark means "begin at the next  
3250 available event".

3251 **R7.2.6-7:** A conformant service MAY support the reserved bookmark  
3252 **<http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/bookmark/earliest>** and  
3253 not support any other type of bookmark.

### 3254 7.2.7 Delivery Modes

3255 A WS-Management implementation may support a variety of event delivery modes.

3256 In essence, delivery consists of the following:

- 3257 • A delivery mode (how events are packaged)
- 3258 • An address (the transport and network location)
- 3259 • An authentication profile to use when connecting or delivering the events (security)

3260 The standard security profiles are discussed in Section 9 and may be required for subscriptions if the  
3261 service needs hints or other indications of which security model to use at event-time.

3262 If the delivery mode is supported but not actually usable due to firewall configuration, then a  
3263 `wse:DeliveryModeRequestedUnavailable` fault should be issued with additional detail to this effect.

3264 **R7.2.7-1:** For any given transport, a conformant service SHOULD support at least  
3265 one of the following delivery modes to interoperate with standard clients:

- 3266 • <http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/DeliveryModes/Push>
- 3267 • <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/PushWithAck>
- 3268 • <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/Events>
- 3269 • <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/Pull>

3270 Note that the delivery mode does *not* imply any specific transport.

3271 Modes describe SOAP message behavior and are unrelated to the transport that is in use. Note that a  
3272 delivery mode implies a specific SOAP message format, so a message which deviates from that format  
3273 will require a new delivery mode.

3274 **R7.2.7-2:** The `wse:NotifyTo` address in the `wse:Subscribe` message MUST  
3275 support only a single delivery mode.

3276 This is actually a requirement for the client, since the service cannot verify that this is true. However, if not  
3277 observed by the client, the service may not operate correctly. If the subscriber supports multiple delivery  
3278 modes, then the `wse:NotifyTo` address must be differentiated in some way, such as by adding an  
3279 additional reference parameter.

### 3280 7.2.8 Event Action URI

3281 Typically, each event type has its own `wsa:Action` to quickly identify and route the event. If an event type  
3282 does not define its own action URI, then the following URI should be used as a default:

3283 `http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/Event`  
3284

3285 This URI may be required in cases where event types are inferred in real-time from other sources and not  
3286 published as Web service events, and thus do not have a designated Action URI. This specification  
3287 places no restrictions on the `wsa:Action` URI for events. The URI should be as specific as possible in  
3288 most cases so that it can act as a reliable dispatching point. In many cases, a fixed schema may serve to  
3289 model many different types of events, in which case the event "ID" is simply a field in the XML content of  
3290 the event. The URI in this case may reflect the schema and be undifferentiated for all of the various  
3291 event IDs which may occur, or it may reflect the specific event by suffixing the event ID to the `wsa:Action`  
3292 URI. This specification places no restrictions on the granularity of the URI, but careful consideration of  
3293 these issues should be made when designing the URIs for events.

### 3294 7.2.9 Delivery Sequencing and Acknowledgement

3295 For some event types, ordered and acknowledged delivery is important, but for other types of events the  
3296 order of arrival is not significant. WS-Management defines four standard delivery modes:

- 3297 • **<http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/DeliveryModes/Push>**  
3298 With this mode, each SOAP message has only one event and no acknowledgement or SOAP  
3299 response. The service MAY deliver events for the subscription asynchronously without regard to any  
3300 events already in transit. This is primarily useful when the order of events does not matter, such as  
3301 with events containing running totals in which each new event can replace the previous one  
3302 completely and the timestamp is sufficient for identifying the most recent event.
- 3303 • **<http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/PushWithAck>**  
3304 With this mode, each SOAP message has only one event, but each event is acknowledged before

## Web Services for Management

3305 another may be sent. The service MUST queue all undelivered events for the subscription and only  
3306 deliver each new event after the previous one has been acknowledged.

3307 • **http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/Events**

3308 With this mode, each SOAP message can have many events, but each batch is acknowledged  
3309 before another may be sent. The service MUST queue all events for the subscription and deliver  
3310 them in that order, maintaining the order in the batches.

3311 • **http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/Pull**

3312 With this mode, each SOAP message can have many events, but each batch is acknowledged.  
3313 Since the receiver uses wsen:Pull to synchronously retrieve the events, acknowledgement is implicit.  
3314 The order of delivery must be maintained.

3315 There is no implication that ordering of events occurs across subscriptions.

3316 The acknowledgement model is discussed in section 7.7.

### 3317 7.2.10 Push Mode

3318 The standard mode from WS-Eventing is

3319 **http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/DeliveryModes/Push**, in which each delivery  
3320 consists of a single event. There is no acknowledgement, so the delivery cannot be faulted to cancel the  
3321 subscription.

3322 Therefore, subscriptions made with this delivery mode should have short durations to prevent a situation  
3323 in which deliveries cannot be stopped if the wse:SubscriptionManager content from the  
3324 wse:SubscribeResponse information is corrupted or lost.

3325 To promote fast routing of events, the required wsa:Action URI in each event message should be distinct  
3326 for each event type, regardless of how strongly typed the event body is.

3327 **R7.2.10-1:** A service MAY support the  
3328 <http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/DeliveryModes/Push>  
3329 delivery mode.

3330 **R7.2.10-2:** To precisely control how to deal with events which are too large, the  
3331 service MAY accept the following additional instruction in a subscription:  
3332

```
3333 <wse:Delivery>  
3334   <wsa:Address> ... </wsa:Address>  
3335   ...  
3336   <wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize Policy="enumConstant">  
3337     xs:positiveInteger  
3338   </wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize>  
3339   ...
```

3340 The following describes additional, normative constraints on the outline listed above:

3341 **wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize**

3342 The maximum number of octets for the entire SOAP envelope in a single event delivery.

3343 **wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize/@Policy**

3344 An OPTIONAL value with one of the following enumeration values:

3345 a) **CancelSubscription:** cancel on the first oversized event.

3346 b) **Skip:** silently skip oversized events.

3347 c) **Notify:** notify the subscriber that events were dropped as specified in section 7.9.

3348 **R7.2.10-3:** If wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize is requested, the service MUST NOT send  
 3349 an event body larger than the specified limit. The default behavior is to  
 3350 notify the subscriber as specified in section 7.9, unless otherwise instructed  
 3351 in the subscription, and attempt to continue delivery. If the event exceeds  
 3352 any internal default maximums, the service SHOULD also attempt to notify  
 3353 as specified in section 7.9 rather than terminate the subscription, unless  
 3354 otherwise specified in the subscription. If wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize is too  
 3355 large for the service, the service MUST return a wsman:EncodingLimit fault  
 3356 with a detail code of  
 3357 `http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/MaxEnvelopeSi`  
 3358 `ze.`

3359 Note that, in the absence of any other Policy instructions, services should deliver notifications of dropped  
 3360 events to subscribers, as specified in section 7.9.

### 3361 7.2.11 PushWithAck Mode

3362 This is identical to the standard "Push" mode except that each delivery is acknowledged. Each delivery  
 3363 still has one event, and the wsa:Action indicates the event type. However, a SOAP-based  
 3364 acknowledgement as described in section 7.7 must occur.

3365 The delivery mode URI is:

3366 `http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/PushWithAck`

3367 In every other respect except the delivery mode URI, this mode is identical to Push mode as described in  
 3368 section 7.2.10.

3369 **R7.2.11-1:** A service SHOULD support the  
 3370 `http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/PushWithAck` delivery  
 3371 mode. If the delivery mode is not supported, a fault of  
 3372 `wse:DeliveryModeRequestedUnavailable` SHOULD be returned.

3373 For management, acknowledged delivery is typically more useful than unacknowledged delivery.

### 3374 7.2.12 Batched Delivery Mode

3375 Batching events is an effective way of minimizing event traffic from a high-volume event source without  
 3376 sacrificing event timeliness. WS-Management defines a custom event delivery mode that allows an event  
 3377 source to bundle multiple outgoing event messages into a single SOAP envelope. Delivery is always  
 3378 acknowledged, using the model defined in section 7.7.

3379 **R7.2.12-1:** A service MAY support the  
 3380 `http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/Events` delivery mode. If  
 3381 the delivery mode is not supported, a fault of  
 3382 `wse:DeliveryModeRequestedUnavailable` SHOULD be returned.

3383 For this delivery mode, the wse:Delivery element has the following format:

3384

```

3385 <wse:Delivery Mode="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/Events">
3386   <wse:NotifyTo>
3387     wsa:EndpointReferenceType
3388   </wse:NotifyTo>
3389   <wsman:MaxElements> xs:positiveInteger </wsman:MaxElements> ?
3390   <wsman:MaxTime> xs:duration </wsman:MaxTime> ?
  
```

## Web Services for Management

```
3391  ⌘      <wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize Policy="enumConstant"> xs:positiveInteger </wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize> ?  
3392  ⌘      </wse:Delivery>
```

3393 The following describes additional, normative constraints on the outline listed above:

3394 wse:Delivery/@Mode

3395 MUST be <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/Events>.

3396 wse:Delivery/wse:NotifyTo

3397 This required element MUST contain the endpoint reference to which event messages should be  
3398 sent for this subscription.

3399 wse:Delivery/wsman:MaxElements

3400 This optional element MAY contain a positive integer that indicates the maximum number of event  
3401 bodies to batch into a single SOAP envelope. The resource MUST NOT deliver more than this  
3402 number of items in a single delivery, although it MAY deliver fewer.

3403 wse:Delivery/wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize

3404 This optional element MAY contain a positive integer that indicates the maximum number of octets in  
3405 the SOAP envelope used to deliver the events. Note that `wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize` only applies to  
3406 the response to the current message (`wse:Subscribe`) and does not apply to the resulting delivery  
3407 stream of a subscription.

3408 wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize/@Policy

3409 An OPTIONAL attribute with one of the following enumeration values:

- 3410 • **CancelSubscription:** cancel on the first oversized events.
- 3411 • **Skip:** silently skip oversized events.
- 3412 • **Notify:** notify the subscriber that events were dropped as specified in section 7.9.

3413

3414 wse:Delivery/wsman:MaxTime

3415 This optional element MAY contain a duration that indicates the maximum amount of time the service  
3416 should allow to elapse while batching EVENT bodies. That is, this time may not be exceeded  
3417 between the encoding of the first event in the batch and the dispatching of the batch for delivery.  
3418 Some publisher implementations may choose more complex schemes in which different events  
3419 included in the subscription are delivered at different latencies or at different priorities. In such  
3420 cases, a specific filter dialect should be designed for the purpose and used to describe the  
3421 instructions to the publisher. In such cases, `wsman:MaxTime` can be omitted if it is not applicable,  
3422 but if present, it serves as an override on anything defined within the filter.

3423 Note that, in the absence of any other instructions in any part of the subscription, services should deliver  
3424 notifications of dropped events to subscribers, as specified in section 7.9.

3425 If a client wants to discover the appropriate values for `wsman:MaxElements` or `wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize`,  
3426 the client should query for service-specific metadata. The format of such metadata is beyond the scope  
3427 of this particular specification.

3428 **R7.2.12-2:** If batched mode is requested in a `Subscribe` message, and none of  
3429 `MaxElements`, `MaxEnvelopeSize`, and `MaxTime` are present, the service  
3430 may pick any applicable defaults. The following faults apply:

- 3431 • `wman:Unsupported` with a fault detail code of  
3432 <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/MaxElements> if  
3433 `MaxElements` is not supported or is excessive.

- 3434 • wman:Unsupported with a fault detail code of  
3435 http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/MaxEnvelopeSize if  
3436 MaxEnvelopeSize is not supported or is excessive.
- 3437 • wman:Unsupported with a fault detail code of  
3438 http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/MaxTime if MaxTime is not  
3439 supported or is excessive.
- 3440 • wman:Unsupported with a fault detail code of  
3441 http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/MaxEnvelopePolicy if  
3442 MaxEnvelopeSize/@Policy is not supported.

3443 **R7.2.12-3:** If wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize is requested, the service MUST NOT send  
3444 an event body larger than the specified limit. The default behavior is to  
3445 notify the subscriber as specified in section 7.9, unless otherwise instructed  
3446 in the subscription, and attempt to continue delivery. If the event exceeds  
3447 any internal default maximums, the service SHOULD also attempt  
3448 notification as specified in section 7.9 rather than terminate the  
3449 subscription, unless otherwise specified in the subscription.

3450 If a subscription has been created using batched mode, all event delivery messages MUST have the  
3451 following format:  
3452

```

3453 <s:Envelope ...>
3454   <s:Header>
3455     ...
3456     <wsa:Action>
3457       http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/Events
3458     </wsa:Action>
3459     ...
3460   </s:Header>
3461   <s:Body>
3462     <wsman:Events>
3463       <wsman:Event Action="event action URI"> +
3464         ...event body...
3465       </wsman:Event>
3466     </wsman:Events>
3467   </s:Body>
3468 </s:Envelope>

```

3469 The following describes additional, normative constraints on the outline listed above:

3470 s:Envelope/s:Header/wsa:Action

3471 MUST be http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/Events.

3472 s:Envelope/s:Body/wsman:Events/wsman:Event

3473 Each of these required elements MUST contain the body of the corresponding event message, as if  
3474 wsman:Event were the s:Body element.

3475 s:Envelope/s:Body/wsman:Events/wsman:Event/@Action

3476 This required attribute MUST contain the Action URI that would have been used for the contained  
3477 event message.

3478 **R7.2.12-4:** If batched mode is requested, deliveries MUST be acknowledged as  
3479 described in section 7.7.

## Web Services for Management

3480 Dropped events (as specified in section 7.9) are encoded along with any other events.

3481 The following example shows batching parameters supplied to a wse:Subscribe operation. The service is  
3482 instructed to send no more than 10 items per batch, to wait no more than 20 seconds from the time the  
3483 first event is encoded until the entire batch is dispatched, and to include no more than 8192 octets in the  
3484 SOAP message:  
3485

```
3486 <...>
3487 <wse:Delivery
3488   Mode="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/Events">
3489   <wse:NotifyTo>
3490     <wsa:Address>http://2.3.4.5/client</wsa:Address>
3491   </wse:NotifyTo>
3492   <wsman:MaxElements>10</wsman:MaxElements>
3493   <wsman:MaxTime>PT20S</wsman:MaxTime>
3494   <wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize>8192</wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize>
3495 </wse:Delivery>
3496
```

3497 Following is an example of batched delivery that conforms to this specification:

```
3498
3499 <s:Envelope
3500   xmlns:s="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope"
3501   xmlns:wsa="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing"
3502   xmlns:wsman="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman.xsd"
3503   xmlns:wse="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/eventing">
3504   <s:Header>
3505     <wsa:To s:mustUnderstand="true">http://2.3.4.5/client</wsa:To>
3506     <wsa:Action>
3507       http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/Events
3508     </wsa:Action>
3509     ...
3510   </s:Header>
3511   <s:Body>
3512     <wsman:Events>
3513       <wsman:Event
3514         Action="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/2005/02/diskspacechange">
3515         <DiskChange
3516           xmlns="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/2005/02/diskspacechange">
3517           <Drive> C: </Drive>
3518           <FreeSpace> 802012911 </FreeSpace>
3519         </DiskChange>
3520         </wsman:Event>
3521       <wsman:Event
3522         Action="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/2005/02/diskspacechange">
3523         <DiskChange
3524           xmlns="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/2005/02/diskspacechange">
3525           <Drive> D: </Drive>
3526           <FreeSpace> 1402012913 </FreeSpace>
3527         </DiskChange>
3528       </wsman:Event>

```

```

3529 </wsman:Events>
3530 </s:Body>
3531 </s:Envelope>

```

3532 Note the use of the generic Action in line 40, which specifies that this is a batch containing distinct events.  
 3533 The individual event bodies are at lines 48–52 and lines 56–60. Note that the actual Action attribute for  
 3534 the individual events is an attribute of the wsman:Event wrapper.

### 3535 7.2.13 Pull Delivery Mode

3536 In some circumstances, polling for events is an effective way of controlling data flow and balancing  
 3537 timeliness against processing ability. Also, in some cases, network restrictions prevent "push" modes  
 3538 from being used; that is, the service cannot initiate a connection to the subscriber.

3539 WS-Management defines a custom event delivery mode, "pull mode", which allows an event source to  
 3540 maintain a logical queue of event messages received by enumeration. For this delivery mode, the  
 3541 wse:Delivery element has the following format:

```

3542
3543 <wse:Delivery Mode="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/Pull">
3544   ...
3545 </wse:Delivery>
3546
3547

```

3548 The following describes additional, normative constraints on the outline listed above:

3549 wse:Delivery/@Mode  
 3550 MUST be "http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/Pull".

3551 **R7.2.13-1:** A service is NOT REQUIRED to support the  
 3552 http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/Pull delivery mode. If  
 3553 requested but not supported, the service MUST return a fault of  
 3554 wse:DeliveryModeRequestedUnavailable.

3555 Note that wsman:MaxElements, wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize, and wsman:MaxTime do not apply in the  
 3556 wse:Subscribe message when using this delivery mode, as the wsen:Pull message contains all of the  
 3557 necessary functionality for controlling the batching and timing of the responses.

3558 **R7.2.13-2:** If a subscription incorrectly specifies parameters that are not compatible  
 3559 with "pull mode", then the service SHOULD issue a  
 3560 wsman:UnsupportedFeature fault with a detail code of  
 3561 http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/FormatMismatch.  
 3562

3563 **R7.2.13-3:** If pull mode is requested in a Subscribe message and the event source  
 3564 accepts the subscription request, the SubscribeResponse element in the  
 3565 REPLY message MUST contain a wsen:EnumerationContext element  
 3566 suitable for use in a subsequent wsen:Pull operation:  
 3567

```

3568 <s:Body ...>
3569   <wse:SubscribeResponse ...>
3570     <wse:SubscriptionManager>
3571       wsa:EndpointReferenceType
3572     </wse:SubscriptionManager>
3573     <wse:Expires>[xs:dateTime | xs:duration]</wse:Expires>
3574     <wsen:EnumerationContext>...</wsen:EnumerationContext>

```

## Web Services for Management

```
3575     ...
3576     </wse:SubscribeResponse>
3577 </s:Body>
```

3578 The subscriber extracts the wsen:EnumerationContext and uses it thereafter in wsen:Pull requests.

3579 **R7.2.13-4:** If pull mode is active, wsen:Pull messages MUST contain the EPR of  
3580 the subscription manager obtained from the wse:SubscribeResponse  
3581 message. The EPR reference parameters are of a service-specific format,  
3582 but may use the WS-Management default addressing model if it is suitable.

3583 **R7.2.13-5:** If pull mode is active, and a wsen:Pull request returns no events  
3584 (because none have occurred since the last "pull"), the service SHOULD  
3585 return a wsman:TimedOut fault. The wsen:EnumerationContext is still  
3586 considered active, and the subscriber may continue to issue wsen:Pull  
3587 requests with the most recent wsen:EnumerationContext for which event  
3588 deliveries actually occurred.

3589 **R7.2.13-6:** If pull mode is active, and a wsen:Pull request returns events, the  
3590 service MUST return an updated wsen:EnumerationContext as specified for  
3591 wsen:Pull, and the subscriber is expected to use the update in the  
3592 subsequent wsen:Pull, as specified for WS-Enumeration. Bookmarks, if  
3593 active, may also be returned in the header and must also be updated by the  
3594 service.

3595 In practice, the service may not actually change the EnumerationContext, but the client should not count  
3596 on it remaining constant. It is conceptually updated, whether in reality or not.

3597 Note that in pull mode, the wsen:Pull request controls the batching. If no defaults are specified, the batch  
3598 size is 1 and the maximum envelope size and timeouts are service-defined.

3599 **R7.2.13-7:** If pull mode is active, the service MUST NOT return a  
3600 wsen:EndOfSequence element in the event stream, as there is no concept  
3601 of a "last event". Rather, the enumeration context should become invalid if  
3602 the subscription expires or is canceled for any reason.

3603 **R7.2.13-8:** If pull mode is used, the service MUST accept the  
3604 wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize used in the wsen:Pull as the limitation on the  
3605 event size that can be delivered.

3606 Note that the batching properties used in batched mode do not apply to pull mode. The client controls the  
3607 maximum event size using the normal mechanisms in wsen:Pull.

### 3608 7.3 GetStatus

3609 This message is optional for WS-Management.

3610 **R7.3-1:** A conformant service is NOT REQUIRED to implement the GetStatus  
3611 message or its response. It is NOT RECOMMENDED that services  
3612 implement this for future compatibility.

3613 If implemented, WS-Management adds no new information to the request or response beyond that  
3614 defined in WS-Eventing. Heartbeat support should be implemented rather than GetStatus.

### 3615 7.4 Unsubscribe

3616 Unsubscribe cancels a subscription.

3617 **R7.4-1:** If a service supports wse:Subscribe, it MUST implement the Unsubscribe  
3618 message and ensure that event delivery will be terminated if the message  
3619 is accepted as valid. It is NOT REQUIRED that the service stop event flow  
3620 prior to responding to the Unsubscribe message as an atomic operation,  
3621 only that the event traffic stops at some point.

3622 **R7.4-2:** A service MAY unilaterally cancel a subscription for any reason, including  
3623 internal timeouts, reconfiguration, or unreliable connectivity.

3624 Note that clients must be prepared to receive any events already in transit even though they have issued  
3625 a wse:Unsubscribe message. Clients may fault any such deliveries or accept them, at their option.

3626 Note that the EPR to use for this message was received from the wse:SubscribeResponse in the  
3627 wse:SubscriptionManager element.

### 3628 **7.5 Renew**

3629 According to WS-Eventing, processing the wse:Renew message is not optional, but there is no  
3630 requirement that it actually must succeed.

3631 **R7.5-1:** While a service MUST support the wse:Renew message in terms of  
3632 accepting it as a valid action, a conformant service MAY always fault the  
3633 request with a wse:UnableToRenew fault, forcing the client to subscribe  
3634 from scratch.

3635 Renew has no effect on deliveries in progress, bookmarks, heartbeats or other ongoing activity. It simply  
3636 extends the lifetime of the subscription.

3637 Note that the EPR to use for this message was received from the wse:SubscribeResponse in the  
3638 wse:SubscriptionManager element.

### 3639 **7.6 SubscriptionEnd**

3640 This message is optional for WS-Management. In effect, it is the "last event" for a subscription. Since its  
3641 primary purpose is to warn a subscriber that a subscription has ended, it is not really suitable for use with  
3642 pull-mode delivery.

3643 **R7.6-1:** A conformant service is NOT REQUIRED to implement the  
3644 SubscriptionEnd message. If implemented, the service MAY fail to accept  
3645 a subscription with any address differing from the NotifyTo address.

3646 **R7.6-2:** A conformant service MUST NOT implement the SubscriptionEnd when  
3647 event delivery is done using pull mode as defined in section 7.2.12.

3648 **R7.6-3:** If SubscriptionEnd is supported, the message MUST contain any reference  
3649 parameters specified by the subscriber in the EndTo address in the original  
3650 subscription.

3651 **R7.6-4:** If SubscriptionEnd is supported, it is RECOMMENDED that it be sent to the  
3652 subscriber prior to sending the UnsubscribeResponse.

3653 If the service delivers events over the same connection as the wse:Subscribe operation, the client  
3654 typically knows that a subscription has been terminated since the connection itself will close or terminate.

3655 When the delivery connection is distinct from the subscribe connection, a SubscriptionEnd message is  
3656 highly recommended, or else the client has no immediate way of knowing that a subscription is no longer  
3657 active.

### 3658 7.7 Acknowledgement of Delivery

3659 To ensure delivery is acknowledged at the application level, the original subscription may request that the  
3660 subscriber physically acknowledge event deliveries, rather than relying entirely on transport-level  
3661 guarantees.

3662 In other words, the transport may have accepted delivery of the events but not forwarded them to the  
3663 actual subscriber process, and the service would move on to the next set of events. System failures  
3664 might result in dropped events. Therefore, a mechanism is needed in which a message-level  
3665 acknowledgement can occur. This allows acknowledgement to be pushed up to the application level,  
3666 increasing the reliability of event deliveries.

3667 The client selects acknowledged delivery by selecting a delivery mode in which each event has a  
3668 response. In this specification, the two acknowledged delivery modes are:

- 3669 • <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/PushWithAck>
- 3670 • <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/Events>

3671 **R7.7-1:** A conformant service is NOT REQUIRED to support any specific delivery  
3672 mode. However, if either of the above delivery modes is requested, to  
3673 maintain an ordered queue of events, the service MUST wait for the  
3674 acknowledgement from the client before delivering the next event or events  
3675 which match the subscription.

3676 **R7.7-2:** If an acknowledged delivery mode is selected for the subscription, the  
3677 service MUST include the following SOAP headers in each event delivery:  
3678

```
3679 <s:Header>  
3680 <wsa:ReplyTo> where to send the acknowledgement </wsa:ReplyTo>  
3681 <wsman:AckRequested/>
```

3682  
3683 **wsa:ReplyTo**

3684 This will always be present in the event delivery as a consequence of the **wsman:AckRequested**.  
3685 The client must extract this address and send the acknowledgement to the specified EPR.

3686 **wsman:AckRequested**

3687 No content. This requires that the subscriber acknowledge all deliveries as described below.

3688 The client must then reply to the delivery with an acknowledgement or a fault.

3689 **R7.7-3:** A service MAY request receipt acknowledgement by using the  
3690 **wsman:AckRequested** block and subsequently expect an  
3691 **<http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/Ack>** message. If this  
3692 message is not received as a reply, the service MAY terminate the  
3693 subscription.

3694 The acknowledgement message format returned by the subscriber (receiver) to the service is identical for  
3695 all delivery modes. It contains a unique **wsa:Action**, and MUST contain the **wsa:RelatesTo** field set to the  
3696 **MessageID** of the event delivery to which it applies:  
3697

```
3698 <s:Envelope ...>  
3699 <s:Header>  
3700 ...  
3701 <wsa:To> endpoint reference from the event delivery ReplyTo field </wsa:To>  
3702 <wsa:Action> http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/Ack </wsa:Action>
```

```

3703  <wsa:RelatesTo> message ID of original event delivery </wsa:RelatesTo>
3704  ...
3705  </s:Header>
3706  <s:Body/>
3707  </s:Envelope>

```

3708 The following describes additional, normative constraints on the outline listed above:

3709 s:Envelope/s:Header/wsa:Action

3710 MUST be <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/Ack>.

3711 s:Envelope/s:Header/wsa:RelatesTo

3712 MUST contain the wsa:MessageID of the event delivery to which it refers.

3713 s:Envelope/s:Header/wsa:To

3714 The endpoint reference address extracted from the ReplyTo field in the event delivery. All reference  
3715 parameters must be extracted and added to the SOAP header as well.

3716 Note that wsa:RelatesTo may not be omitted as it is the critical item which ensures that the correct  
3717 delivery is being acknowledged.

3718 In spite of the request to acknowledge, the client may refuse delivery with a fault or fail to respond with  
3719 the acknowledgement. In this case, the service should terminate the subscription and send any applicable  
3720 SubscriptionEnd messages.

3721 If the client does not support acknowledgement, it may respond with a wsman:UnsupportedFeature fault  
3722 with a detail code <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/Ack>.

3723 However, this is as difficult as acknowledging the delivery, so most clients should scan for the  
3724 wsman:AckRequested field and be prepared to acknowledge delivery or fault it.

3725 Note that simple push mode has no way for the client to fault a delivery or acknowledge it.

## 3726 7.8 Refusal of Delivery

3727 With all acknowledged delivery modes as described in section 7.7, a subscriber may refuse to take  
3728 delivery of events, either for security reasons or a policy change. It then responds with a fault rather than  
3729 an acknowledgement.

3730 In this case, the service must be prepared to end the subscription even though a wse:Unsubscribe  
3731 message is not issued by the subscriber.

3732 **R7.8-1:** During event delivery, if the receiver faults the delivery with a  
3733 wsman:DeliveryRefused fault, the service MUST immediately cancel the  
3734 subscription and MAY also issue a wse:SubscriptionEnd message to the  
3735 wse:EndTo endpoint in the original subscription, if supported.

3736 Thus, the receiver MAY issue the fault as a way to cancel the subscription when it does not have the  
3737 wse:SubscriptionManager information.

## 3738 7.9 Dropped Events

3739 Events which cannot be delivered should not be silently dropped from the event stream, or the subscriber  
3740 gets a false picture of the event history. WS-Management defines three behaviors for events which  
3741 cannot be delivered with push modes or which are too large to fit within the delivery constraints requested  
3742 by the subscriber:

- 3743 a) Terminate the subscription

## Web Services for Management

- 3744           b) Silently skip such events  
3745           c) Send a special event in place of the dropped events

3746 These options are discussed in sections 7.2.10 and 7.2.11.

3747 During delivery, the service may have to drop events for a number of reasons: they exceed the maximum  
3748 size requested by the subscriber, the client cannot keep up with the event flow and there is a backlog, or  
3749 the service might have been reconfigured or restarted and the events permanently lost. In these cases, a  
3750 service should inform the client that events have been dropped.

3751           **R7.9-1:** If a service drops events, it SHOULD issue an  
3752           **<http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/DroppedEvents>** event  
3753           which indicates this to the client. Any reference parameters specified in the  
3754           wse:NotifyTo address in the subscription MUST also be copied into this  
3755           message. This is a normal event and implicitly considered part of any  
3756           subscription.

3757           **R7.9-2:** If an **<http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/DroppedEvents>**  
3758           event is issued, it MUST take the ordinal position of the original dropped  
3759           event in the delivery stream. If batched delivery mode is in use, the event  
3760           takes the place in the batch of the event it represents.

3761 Note that this event is considered the same as any other event with regard to its location and other  
3762 behavior (bookmarks, acknowledged delivery, location in batch, etc.). It simply takes the place of the  
3763 dropped event.  
3764

```
3765 <s:Envelope ...>  
3766 <s:Header>  
3767   ...subscriber endpoint-reference...  
3768 </s:Header>  
3769 <wsa:Action>  
3770   http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/DroppedEvents  
3771 </wsa:Action>  
3772 </s:Header>  
3773 <s:Body>  
3774   <wsman:DroppedEvents Action="wsa:Action URI of dropped event">  
3775     xs:int  
3776   </wsman:DroppedEvents>  
3777   ...  
3778 </s:Body>  
3779 </s:Envelope>
```

3780 The following describes additional, normative constraints on the outline listed above:

3781 s:Envelope/s:Header/wsa:Action

3782       MUST be <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/DroppedEvents>.

3783 s:Body/wsman:DroppedEvents/@Action

3784       The Action URI of the event which was dropped.

3785 s:Body/wsman:DroppedEvents

3786       A positive integer which represents the total number of dropped events since the subscription was  
3787       created.

3788 Note that wse:Renew has no effect on the running total of dropped events. Dropped events are like any  
3789 other events and may require acknowledgement, affect the bookmark location, and so on.

3790 Here is an example of how a dropped event would appear in the middle of a batched event delivery:

```
3791
3792 <wsman:Events>
3793   <wsman:Event Action="https://foo.com/someEvent">
3794     ...event body
3795   </wsman:Event>
3796   <wsman:Event Action="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/DroppedEvents">
3797     <wsman:DroppedEvents Action="https://foo.com/someEvent"> 1 </wsman:DroppedEvents>
3798   </wsman:Event>
3799   <wsman:Event Action="https://foo.com/someEvent">
3800     ...event body
3801   </wsman:Event>
3802 </wsman:Events>
```

3803 Note that the dropped event is an event in itself.

3804

3805 **R7.9-3:** If a service cannot deliver an event and does not support the  
3806 **http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/DroppedEvents** event,  
3807 it SHOULD terminate the subscription rather than silently skipping events.

3808 Since this cannot be enforced, and some dropped events are irrelevant when replaced by a subsequent  
3809 event (running totals, for example), it is not a firm requirement that dropped events are signaled or that  
3810 they result in a termination of the subscription.

## 3811 8 Metadata and Discovery

3812 The WS-Management protocol is compatible with many techniques for discovery of resources available  
3813 through a service and composable with many such protocols.

3814 In addition, this specification defines a simple request-response operation to facilitate the process of  
3815 establishing communications with a WS-Management service implementation in a variety of network  
3816 environments without *a priori* knowledge of the protocol version or versions supported by the  
3817 implementation. This message is used to discover the presence of a WS-Management compatible  
3818 service assuming that a transport address is known over which the message can be delivered. Typically,  
3819 a simple HTTP address would be used.

3820 To ensure forward compatibility, the message content of this operation is defined in an XML namespace  
3821 that is separate from the core protocol namespace and which will not change as the protocol evolves.  
3822 Further this operation does not depend on any SOAP envelope header or body content other than the  
3823 types explicitly defined for this operation. In this way, WS-Management clients are assured of the ability  
3824 to use this operation against all implementations and versions to confirm the presence of WS-  
3825 Management services without knowing the supported protocol versions or features in advance.

3826 The request message is defined as follows:

```
3827 (1) <s:Envelope
3828     (2)   xmlns:s="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope"
3829     (3)   xmlns:wsmid="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/identity/1/wsmanidentity.xsd"
3830 (4) <s:Header>
3831 (5)   ...
3832 (6) </s:Header>
```

## Web Services for Management

```
3833 (7) <s:Body>
3834 (8)   <wsmid:Identify>
3835 (9)     ...
3836 (10)  </wsmid:Identify>
3837 (11) </s:Body>
3838 (12) </s:Envelope>
```

3839 The following describes additional, normative constraints on the outline listed above:

### 3840 wsmid:Identify

3841 The body of the Identify request operation. This may contain additional vendor-specific extension  
3842 content, but is otherwise empty. The presence of this body element constitutes the request.

3843

3844 Note the absence of any WS-Addressing namespace, WS-Management namespace, or other version-  
3845 specific concepts. This message is compatible only with the basic SOAP specification, and the presence  
3846 of the wsmid:Identify block in the s:Body is the embodiment of the request operation.

3847 The response message is defined as follows:

```
3848 (13) <s:Envelope
3849 (14)   xmlns:s="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope"
3850 (15)
3851   xmlns:wsmid="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman.xsdIdentity/1.0/wsmanIdentity.xsd"
3852 (16) <s:Header>
3853 (17)   ...
3854 (18) </s:Header>
3855 (19) <s:Body>
3856 (20)   <wsmid:IdentifyResponse>
3857 (21)     <wsmid:ProtocolVersion> xs:anyURI </wsmid:ProtocolVersion> +
3858 (22)     <wsmid:ProductVendor> xs:string </wsmid:ProductVendor> ?
3859 (23)     <wsmid:ProductVersion> xs:string </wsmid:ProductVersion> ?
3860 (24)     ...
3861 (25)   </wsmid:IdentifyResponse>
3862 (26) </s:Body>
3863 (27) </s:Envelope>
```

3864 The following describes additional, normative constraints on the outline listed above:

### 3865 wsmid:IdentifyResponse

3866 The body of the response, which packages metadata about the WS-Management implementation.

### 3867 wsmid:IdentifyResponse/wsmid:ProtocolVersion

3868 A REQUIRED element or elements, each of which is a URI whose value MUST be equal to the core  
3869 XML namespace identifying a supported version of the WS-Management specification. One element  
3870 MUST be provided for each supported version of the protocol.

### 3871 wsmid:IdentifyResponse/wsmid:ProductVendor

3872 An OPTIONAL element that identifies the vendor of the WS-Management service implementation  
3873 using a widely recognized name or token, such as the official corporate name of the vendor or its  
3874 stock symbol. Alternately, a DNS name, e-mail address, or Web URL may be used.

### 3875 wsmid:IdentifyResponse/wsmid:ProductVersion

3876 An OPTIONAL version string for the WS-Management implementation. This specification places no  
3877 constraints on the format or content of this element.

3878  
3879 In addition, vendor-specific content may follow these standardized elements.

3880 **R8.9-1:** A WS-Management service SHOULD support the wsmid:Identify operation.  
3881 A service implementation that supports the operation MUST do so  
3882 irrespective of the version(s) of WS-Management supported by that service.  
3883 The operation MUST be accessible at the same transport-level address at  
3884 which the resource instances are made accessible.

3885 It is recommended that client applications not include any SOAP header content in the wsmid:Identify  
3886 operation delivered to the transport address against which the inquiry is being made. If SOAP header  
3887 elements are present, the *s:mustUnderstand* attribute on all such elements should be set to "false". Doing  
3888 otherwise reduces the likelihood of a successful, version-independent response from the service.

3889 **R8.9-2:** A service supporting the wsmid:Identify operation MUST NOT require the  
3890 presence of any SOAP header elements in order to dispatch execution of  
3891 the request. If a service receives a wsmid:Identify operation containing  
3892 unexpected or unsupported header content with *mustUnderstand* set to  
3893 "false", the service MUST NOT fault the request and MUST process the  
3894 body of the request as though the header elements were not present.

3895 **R8.9-3:** A service processing the wsmid:Identify request SHOULD NOT request the  
3896 presence of any WS-Addressing header values, including the wsa:Action  
3897 URI.

3898 The entire purpose of this mechanism is to be able to identify the presence of specific versions of WS-  
3899 Management (and the corresponding dependent protocols) in a version-independent manner.

3900 Note that because WS-Addressing is not used, the address to which this message is delivered is defined  
3901 entirely at the transport level and not present in the SOAP content.

3902 In order to provide that a client does not need to have any a-priori knowledge about a service before  
3903 calling Identify, it is desirable to allow a service to process an Identify message without requiring  
3904 authentication.

3905  
3906 **R8.9-4:** A service supporting the wsmid:Identify operation MAY expose this operation without  
3907 requiring client or server authentication in order to process the message.

3908

## 3909 **9 Security**

### 3910 **9.1 Introduction**

3911 In general, management operations and responses should be protected against attacks such as  
3912 snooping, interception, replay, and modification during transmission. Generally, authenticating the user  
3913 who has sent a request is also necessary so that access control rules can be applied to determine  
3914 whether or not to process a request.

3915 This specification establishes the minimum interoperation standards and predefined profiles using  
3916 transport-level security.

3917 This approach provides the best balance between simple implementations (HTTP and HTTPS stacks are  
3918 readily available, even for hardware) and the security mechanisms that sit in front of any SOAP message  
3919 processing, limiting the attack surface.

## Web Services for Management

3920 It is expected that more sophisticated transport and SOAP-level profiles will be defined and used,  
3921 published separately from this specification.

3922 Implementations which expect to interoperate should adopt one or more of the transport and security  
3923 models defined in this chapter and are free to define any additional profiles under different URI-based  
3924 designators.

### 3925 9.2 Security Profiles

3926 For this specification, a profile is any arbitrary mix of transport or SOAP behavior which describes a  
3927 common security need. In some cases, the profile is defined for documentation and metadata purposes,  
3928 but may not be part of the actual message exchange. Rather, it *describes* the message exchange  
3929 involved.

3930 Metadata retrieval should be employed to discover which profiles the service supports, and that is beyond  
3931 the scope of this particular specification.

3932 For all predefined profiles, the transport is responsible for all message integrity, protection, authentication,  
3933 and security.

3934 The authentication profiles are used for descriptive and metadata purposes and do not actually show up  
3935 in the SOAP traffic, with the exception of the wse:Subscribe message when using any delivery mode  
3936 which causes a new connection to be created from the publisher to the subscriber (push and batched  
3937 modes, for example). When a subscription is created, the authentication technique for event-delivery  
3938 needs to be specified by the subscriber, since the subscriber will have to authenticate the service (acting  
3939 as publisher) at event-time.

3940 In this specification, security profiles are identified by a URI. As profiles are defined for transports, they  
3941 should be assigned a URI and published. WS-Management defines a set of standardized security  
3942 profiles for the common transports HTTP and HTTPS, which are described in 12.4.

### 3943 9.3 Security Considerations for Event Subscriptions

3944 When specifying the wse:NotifyTo address in subscriptions, it is often important to hint to the service  
3945 about which authentication model to use when delivering the event.

3946 If no hints are present, then the service can simply infer from the wsa:To address what needs to be done.  
3947 However, if the service can support multiple modes and has a certificate or password store, it may not  
3948 know which authentication model to choose or which credentials to use without being told in the  
3949 subscription.

3950 Because of the wide variety of capabilities of services, no mechanism is defined at the message level for  
3951 negotiating which security profiles may be supported by the service. Instead, the service should export  
3952 metadata which describes the available options. The format of such metadata is beyond the scope of this  
3953 particular specification.

3954 WS-Management defines an additional field in the wse:Delivery block which can communicate  
3955 authentication information:  
3956

```
3957 <s:Body>  
3958 <wse:Subscribe>  
3959 <wse:Delivery>  
3960 <wse:NotifyTo> Delivery EPR </wse:NotifyTo>  
3961 <wsman:Auth Profile="authentication-profile-URI"/>  
3962 </wse:Delivery>  
</wse:Subscribe>  
</s:Body>
```

3963 The following describes additional, normative constraints on the outline listed above:

3964 wsman:Auth

3965 This block contains authentication information to be used by the service (acting as publisher) when  
3966 authenticating to the subscriber (the client) at event delivery time. This block contains a simple string  
3967 which encodes a token to be used. The Profile attribute indicates the format of the token.

3968 wsman:Auth/@Profile

3969 A URI which indicates which security profile to use when making the connection to deliver events.

3970 If the wsman:Auth block is not present, then the service must infer what to do by using the wse:NotifyTo  
3971 address using any preconfigured policy or settings it has available. If it is present and no security-related  
3972 tokens are communicated, the service must know which credentials to use by its own internal  
3973 configuration.

3974 For example, if the service is already configured to use a specific certificate when delivering events, the  
3975 subscriber can request standard mutual authentication:

3976

```
3977 <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" ?>
3978 <s:Body>
3979   <wse:Subscribe>
3980     <wse:Delivery>
3981       <wse:NotifyTo> HTTPS address </wse:NotifyTo>
3982     <wsman:Auth
3983       Profile="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/secprofile/https/mutual"/>
3984   </wse:Delivery>
3985 </wse:Subscribe>
3986 </s:Body>
```

3983 Similarly, if the service knows how to retrieve a proper username and password for event delivery, simple  
3984 HTTP Basic or Digest authentication can be used:

3985

```
3986 <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" ?>
3987 <s:Body>
3988   <wse:Subscribe>
3989     <wse:Delivery>
3990       <wse:NotifyTo> HTTP address </wse:NotifyTo>
3991     <wsman:Auth
3992       Profile="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/secprofile/http/digest"/>
3993   </wse:Delivery>
3994 </wse:Subscribe>
3995 </s:Body>
```

3992 There is no requirement that the service support any specific profile. The rest of this section defines  
3993 special-case profiles for event delivery in which the service needs additional information to select the  
3994 proper credentials to use when delivering events.

## 3995 9.4 Including Credentials with a Subscription

3996 In addition to specifying the authentication profile using the wsman:Auth block, the subscriber may wish to  
3997 send additional tokens to the service to indicate which credentials to use when making the connection to  
3998 deliver events. As stated in the previous section, if no tokens are specified, the service must be  
3999 preconfigured to know which credentials to use. However, the service may require that the client supply  
4000 partial or full credentials with the subscription to use later when making the connection to deliver the  
4001 events.

4002 The communication of credentials is independent of the authentication mode communicated in the  
4003 wsman:Auth block. The same username, password, or certificate identity could be used with a variety of  
4004 transports.

4005 Standard communication of credentials is done using a WS-Trust wst:IssuedTokens header block as  
4006 defined in section 6.4 of the WS-Trust specification. Use of WS-Trust for this purpose helps to assure  
4007 interoperability of secured event delivery. Using other mechanisms introduces implementation-specific  
4008 behavior and makes writing compatible client-side implementations more difficult.

## Web Services for Management

4009 In the following example, the user name token is conveyed in the headers to the wse:Subscribe message  
4010 in a wst:IssuedTokens block (lines 9–27):  
4011

```
4012 <s:Envelope ...  
4013   xmlns:wsp="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/policy"  
4014   xmlns:wst="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/02/trust">  
4015 <s:Header ...>  
4016   <wsa:Action>  
4017     http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/Subscribe  
4018   </wsa:Action>  
4019   ...  
4020   <wst:IssuedTokens mustUnderstand="true">  
4021     <wst:RequestSecurityTokenResponse>  
4022       <wst:TokenType>  
4023         http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-wss-username-token-profile-  
4024         1.0#UsernameToken  
4025       </wst:TokenType>  
4026     <wst:RequestedSecurityToken>  
4027       <wsse:UsernameToken>  
4028         <wsse:Username>JoeUser</wsse:Username>  
4029       </wsse:UsernameToken>  
4030     </wst:RequestedSecurityToken>  
4031   </wst:IssuedTokens>  
4032   <wsp:AppliesTo>  
4033     <wsa:EndpointReference><!-- NotifyTo EPR -->  
4034     <wsa:Address><!-- address of event sink --></wsa:Address>  
4035   </wsp:AppliesTo>  
4036 </wst:RequestSecurityTokenResponse>  
4037 </wst:IssuedTokens>  
4038 </s:Header>  
4039 <s:Body ...>  
4040   <wse:Subscribe ...>  
4041     <wse:Delivery>  
4042       <wse:NotifyTo> ... </wse:NotifyTo>  
4043     </wse:Delivery>  
4044   </wse:Subscribe>  
4045 </s:Body>
```

4052 This wst:IssuedTokens block is divided into three sections:

- 4053 • The type of token or credential being passed: the wst:TokenType wrapper on lines 9–11. This may  
4054 refer to user names, X.509 certificates, or other token types.
- 4055 • The actual security token in a wst:RequestedSecurityToken wrapper (lines 13–17).

- 4056 • What the tokens apply to: the wsp:AppliesTo block from WS-Policy. In this case, the tokens apply to  
 4057 the wse:NotifyTo address in the subscription. The wse:NotifyTo EPR and the wsp:AppliesTo MUST  
 4058 be identical.

4059 Note that the wst:IssuedTokens block must have a SOAP mustUnderstand attribute.

4060 The communication of tokens to the service for later use in event delivery connections is independent of  
 4061 the security profile in use. Typically, the subscriber will pass one of the following to the service using WS-  
 4062 Trust:

- 4063 • A username reference (the service must know the password or other related credentials and only  
 4064 uses the username as a hint to know which credential to use).
- 4065 • An X.509 certificate identifier (thumbprint or "hash"). The service has more than one certificate to  
 4066 use and needs to know which one.
- 4067 • A username and password combination (rarely) which will be directly used to make the connection in  
 4068 the other direction at event-time. This has security implications and should not be delivered to the  
 4069 service over an unencrypted network transport.
- 4070 • Some combination of the above token types (such as a username and a cookie).

4071 These tokens are all intended for use at the transport level when making the connection and do not  
 4072 appear in the SOAP messages. Other token types may be communicated as well, but they are beyond  
 4073 the scope of this specification.

**R9.4-1:** Whenever a user name is communicated to the service, the following WS-Trust usage SHOULD be observed. The wst:TokenType MUST be the following URI:

```

4074
4075
4076
4077
4078
4079 <wst:TokenType>
4080   http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-wss-username-token-profile-
4081   1.0#UsernameToken
4082 </wst:TokenType>
4083
  
```

4084 Additionally, the wst:RequestedSecurityToken must be a  
 4085 wsse:UsernameToken which contains the user name:  
 4086

```

4087 <wst:RequestedSecurityToken>
4088   <wsse:UsernameToken>
4089     <wsse:Username>user-name/wsse:Username</wsse:Username>
4090   </wsse:UsernameToken>
4091 </wst:RequestedSecurityToken>
4092
  
```

4093 The wsse:UsernameToken is defined in **Web Services Security Username Token Profile 1.0 [20]**.  
 4094 WS-Management does not require the use or presence of the other fields in wsse:UsernameToken,  
 4095 although the implementation should return appropriate errors if other submitted fields are not supported,  
 4096 such as wsse:Nonce.

4097 The password may be optionally supplied in clear text as specified in the above specification, but it should  
 4098 be delivered over an encrypted transport:  
 4099

```

4100 <wst:RequestedSecurityToken>
4101   <wsse:UsernameToken>
  
```

## Web Services for Management

```
4102 <wsse:Username>user-name/wsse:Username>
4103 <wsse:Password>password</wsse:Password>
4104 </wsse:UsernameToken>
4105 </wst:RequestedSecurityToken>
```

4106 **R9.4-2:** Whenever an X.509 certificate identity is communicated to the service, the  
4107 following WS-Trust usage SHOULD be observed. The wst:TokenType  
4108 MUST be the following URI:  
4109

```
4110 <wst:TokenType>
4111 http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-wss-x509-token-profile-1.0#x509v3
4112 </wst:TokenType>
4113
4114
```

4115 The wst:RequestedSecurityToken MUST be a wsse:BinarySecurityToken  
4116 with a ValueType of **wsse:X509v3** using a standard encoding type of  
4117 **wsse:Base64Binary**:  
4118

```
4119 <wst:RequestedSecurityToken>
4120 <wsse:BinarySecurityToken
4121 ValueType=
4122 "http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-wss-x509-token-profile-1.0#x509v3"
4123 EncodingType=
4124 "http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-wss-soap-message-security-
4125 1.0#Base64Binary">
4126 MIEZzCCA9CgAwIBAgIQEmtJZc0BAGIQEmtJZc0
4127 </wsse:BinarySecurityToken>
4128 </wst:RequestedSecurityToken>
4129
```

4130 This token type is defined in the **Web Services Security X.509 Certificate Token Profile [21]**.

4131 **R9.4-3:** A conformant service which accepts username, password, or X.509  
4132 certificate references within a wse:Subscribe message for later use in event  
4133 delivery MUST at least support the mechanisms in R9.15-1 and R9.15-2,  
4134 and MAY support any additional mechanisms.

4135 While WS-Trust and the standard WS-Security profiles referenced above provide other options and  
4136 mechanisms, their use is optional and beyond the scope of this version of WS-Management.

## 4137 9.5 Correlation of Events with Subscription

4138 In many cases, the subscriber will want to ensure that the event delivery corresponds to a valid  
4139 subscription issued by an authorized party. In this case, it is recommended that reference parameters be  
4140 introduced into the wse:NotifyTo definition.

4141 For example, at subscription time, a uuid could be supplied as a correlation token:

```
4142
4143 <s:Body>
4144 <wse:Subscribe>
4145 <wse:Delivery>
4146 <wse:NotifyTo>
4147 <wsa:Address> address <wsa:Address>
```

```

4148 <wsa:ReferenceParameters>
4149   <MyNamespace:uuid> uuid:b0f685ec-e5c9-41b5-b91c-7f580419093e </MyNamespace:uuid>
4150 </wsa:ReferenceParameters>
4151 </wse:NotifyTo>
4152 ...

```

4153 This definition requires that the service include the MyNamespace:uuid value as a SOAP header with  
 4154 each delivery (see section 2.1). The service can use this to correlate the event with any subscription that  
 4155 it issued and to validate its origin.

4156 This is not a transport-level or SOAP-level authentication mechanism as such, but it does help to maintain  
 4157 and synchronize valid lists of subscriptions and to determine if the event delivery is authorized or not,  
 4158 even though the connection itself may have been authenticated.

4159 This mechanism still may require the presence of the wsman:Auth block to specify which security  
 4160 mechanism to use to actually authenticate the connection at event-time.

4161 Each new subscription should receive at least one unique reference parameter which is never reused,  
 4162 such as the illustrate uuid, for this mechanism to be of value.

4163 Other reference parameters may of course be present to help route and correlate the event delivery as  
 4164 required by the subscriber.

## 4165 9.6 Transport-Level Authentication Failure

4166 Since transports typically go through their own authentication mechanisms prior to any SOAP traffic  
 4167 occurring, the first attempt to connect may result in a transport-level authentication failure. In such cases,  
 4168 SOAP faults will not occur, and the means of communicating the denial to the client is implementation-  
 4169 and transport-specific.

4170

## 4171 9.7 Security Implications of Third-Party Subscriptions

4172 Without proper authentication and authorization, WS-Management implementations may be vulnerable to  
 4173 distributed denial-of-service attacks through third party subscriptions to events. WS-Management  
 4174 implementations should be mindful of the discussion in section 6.2 ("Access Control") of the WS-Eventing  
 4175 specification to address this vulnerability.

4176

# 4177 10 Transports and Message Encoding

## 4178 10.1 Introduction

4179 This section covers encoding rules which apply to all transports.

## 4180 10.2 SOAP

4181 **R10.2-1:** A SERVICE MUST at least receive and send SOAP 1.2 [SOAP 1.2] SOAP  
 4182 ENVELOPEs.

4183 **R10.2-2:** A SERVICE MAY reject a TEXT SOAP ENVELOPE with more than 32,767  
 4184 octets.

4185 **R10.2-3:** A SERVICE SHOULD NOT send a TEXT SOAP ENVELOPE with more

## Web Services for Management

- 4186 than 32,767 octets unless the client has specified a  
4187 wsman:MaxEnvelopeSize header overriding this limit.
- 4188 Large SOAP ENVELOPES are expected to be serialized using attachments.
- 4189 **R10.2-4:** Any REQUEST MESSAGE MAY be encoded using either UNICODE 3.0  
4190 (UTF-16) or UTF-8 encoding. A service MUST accept either encoding type  
4191 for all operations and emit RESPONSES using the same encoding as the  
4192 original request.
- 4193 Some SOAP-enabled systems only have UNICODE available, and some only have UTF-8. To maximize  
4194 interoperation, a server can easily support both encodings, since R10.3-5 places limits on the required  
4195 character set.
- 4196 **R10.2-5:** A service IS REQUIRED to support characters from U+0000 to U+007F  
4197 inclusive with both UTF-8 and UTF-16 encodings, and MAY support  
4198 characters outside this range. If the message contains unsupported  
4199 characters above U+007F, the service MUST return a  
4200 wsman:EncodingLimit fault.
- 4201 **R10.2-6:** For UTF-8 encodings, the service MAY fail to process any message  
4202 beginning with the UTF-8 BOM (0xEF 0xBB 0xBF) at the beginning of the  
4203 message and MUST send UTF-8 responses without the BOM.
- 4204 The presence of BOM in 8-bit characters encodings reduces interoperation. Where extended characters  
4205 are a requirement, UTF-16 SHOULD be used.
- 4206 Since the only required subrange is U+0000 to U+007F, supporting both UTF-16 and UTF-8 encoding for  
4207 characters is trivial since every other octet in UNICODE UTF-16 is a zero.
- 4208 **R10.2-7:** If UTF-16 is the encoding, the service MUST support either byte-order mark  
4209 (BOM) U+FEFF (big-endian) or U+FFFE (little-endian) as defined in the  
4210 UNICODE 3.0 specification as the first character in the message.
- 4211 (See [http://www.unicode.org/faq/utf\\_bom.html#BOM](http://www.unicode.org/faq/utf_bom.html#BOM).)
- 4212 **R10.2-8:** Duplicate headers SHOULD NOT be processed. The service SHOULD  
4213 issue a wsa:InvalidMessageInformationHeaders fault if they are detected.  
4214 However, a conformant service MAY ignore any duplicate headers if it  
4215 assumes the first occurrence is the valid one.
- 4216 Duplicate headers are considered a defect originating on the client side of the conversation. Returning a  
4217 fault helps identify faulty clients. However, an implementation may be resource-constrained and unable  
4218 to detect duplicate headers, so they may be ignored.
- 4219 **R10.2-9:** By default, a compliant service SHOULD NOT fault requests with leading  
4220 and trailing whitespace in XML element values and SHOULD trim such  
4221 whitespace by default as if the whitespace had not occurred. Services  
4222 SHOULD NOT emit messages containing leading or trailing whitespace  
4223 within element values unless the whitespace values are properly part of the  
4224 value. If the service cannot accept whitespace usage within a message  
4225 because the XML schema establishes other whitespace usage, the service  
4226 should emit a wsman:EncodingLimit fault with a detail code of  
4227 <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/Whitespace>.
- 4228 Clients should not send messages with leading or trailing whitespace in the values, but services should  
4229 eliminate unneeded "cosmetic" whitespace on both sides of the element value without faulting.
- 4230 (See also <http://www.w3.org/TR/2001/REC-xmlschema-2-20010502/#dt-whiteSpace>.)

4231 R10.2-10: Services SHOULD NOT fault messages containing XML comments, as  
4232 this is part of the XML standard. Services MAY emit messages containing  
4233 comments relating to the origin and processing of the message or add  
4234 comments for debugging purposes.

### 4235 10.3 Lack of Response

4236 If an operation succeeds, but a response cannot be computed or actually delivered due to runtime  
4237 difficulties or transport problems, no response should be sent and the connection should be terminated.

4238 Specific transports may have specific techniques for terminating the connection; for example, see R10.2-  
4239 9.

4240 This behavior is preferable to attempting a complex model for sending responses in a delayed fashion.  
4241 Implementations should generally keep a log of all requests and their results, and allow the client to  
4242 reconnect later to enumerate the operation log (using wsen:Enumerate) if they fail to get a response. The  
4243 format and behavior of such a log is beyond the scope of this specification. Since, in any case, the client  
4244 must be coded to take into account a lack of response, all abnormal message conditions can safely revert  
4245 to this scenario.

4246 R10.4-1: If correct responses or faults cannot be computed or generated due to  
4247 internal service failure, a response to any operation SHOULD NOT be sent.

4248 Regardless, the client has to deal with cases of no response, so the service should simply force the client  
4249 into that mode rather than send a response or fault not defined in this specification.

### 4250 10.4 Replay of Messages

4251 A service should not resend messages which have not been acknowledged at the transport level.

4252 R10.4-1: A service MUST NOT resend unacknowledged messages unless they are  
4253 part of a higher, general-purpose, reliable messaging or transactional  
4254 protocol layer, in which case the retransmission follows the rules for that  
4255 protocol.

### 4256 10.5 Encoding Limits

4257 Most of the following limits are in characters. However, the maximum overall SOAP envelope size is  
4258 defined in octets. Implementations are free to exceed these limits. A service is considered conformant if it  
4259 observes these limits. Any limit violation results in a wsman:EncodingLimit fault. In addition to any  
4260 requirements or limits established by the WS-I Basic Profile, the service should observe the following:

4261 R10.5-1 A service MAY fail to process any URI with more than 2048 characters.

4262 R10.5-2: A service SHOULD NOT generate a URI with more than 2048 characters.

4263 R10.5-3: A service MAY fail to process an Option Name of more than 2048  
4264 characters.

4265 R10.5-4: A service MAY fail to process an Option value of more than 4096  
4266 characters.

4267 R10.5-6: A service MAY fault any operation that would require a single reply  
4268 exceeding 32,767 octets.

4269 R10.5-7: A service MAY always emit faults that are 4096 octets or less in length,  
4270 regardless of any requests by the client to limit the response size. Clients  
4271 should always be prepared for this minimum in case of an error.

## Web Services for Management

4272 R10.5-8: When the default addressing model is in use, a service MAY fail to process  
4273 a Selector Name of more than 2048 characters.

4274

4275

## 4276 10.6 Binary Attachments

4277 SOAP Message Transmission Optimization Mechanism (MTOM) is used to support binary attachments to  
4278 WS-Management. If a service supports attachments, the following rules apply:

4279 R10.6-1: A conformant service MAY OPTIONALLY support binary attachments to  
4280 any operation using the SOAP MTOM proposal  
4281 (<http://www.w3.org/TR/2004/PR-soap12-mtom-20041116>).

4282 R10.6-2: If a service supports attachments, the service MUST support the Abstract  
4283 Transmission Optimization Feature.

4284 R10.6-3: If a service supports attachments, the service MUST support the Optimized  
4285 MIME Multipart Serialization Feature.

4286 Other attachment types are not prohibited. Specific transports may impose additional encoding rules.

## 4287 10.7 Case-Sensitivity

4288 While XML and SOAP are intrinsically case-sensitive with regard to schematic elements, WS-  
4289 Management will service many underlying systems which are not intrinsically case-sensitive. This  
4290 primarily applies to values, but may also apply to schemas which are automatically and dynamically  
4291 generated from other sources.

4292 A service may observe any case usage required by the underlying execution environment.

4293 The only requirement is that messages must be able to pass validation tests against any schema  
4294 definitions. At any time, a validation engine may possibly be interposed between the client and server in  
4295 the form of a proxy, so schematically valid messages are a practical requirement.

4296 Otherwise, this specification makes no requirements as to case usage. A service is free to interpret  
4297 values in a case-sensitive or case-insensitive manner.

4298 It is RECOMMENDED that case usage not be altered in transit by any part of the WS-Management  
4299 processing chain. The case usage established by the sender of the message should be retained  
4300 throughout the lifetime of that message.

4301

## 4302 11 Faults

### 4303 11.1 Introduction

4304 Faults are returned when the SOAP message is successfully delivered by the transport and processed by  
4305 the service, but the message cannot be processed properly. If the transport cannot successfully deliver  
4306 the message to the SOAP processor, a transport error will occur.

4307 Only SOAP 1.2 faults (or later) should be supported.

4308 Generally, faults should not be issued unless they are expected as part of a call-response pattern. It  
 4309 would not be valid for a client to issue a wxf:Get, receive the wxf:GetResponse, and then *fault* that  
 4310 response.

## 4311 11.2 Fault Encoding

4312 This section discusses XML fault encoding.

4313 **R11.2-1:** A conformant service MUST use the fault encoding format and normative  
 4314 constraints defined below for faults in the WS-Management space or any of  
 4315 its dependent specifications:  
 4316

```

4317 <s:Envelope>
4318   xmlns:s="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope"
4319   xmlns:wsa="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing">
4320 <s:Header>
4321   <wsa:Action>
4322     http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing/fault
4323   </wsa:Action>
4324   <wsa:MessageID>
4325     uuid:d9726315-bc91-430b-9ed8-ce5ffb858a87
4326   </wsa:MessageID>
4327   <wsa:RelatesTo>
4328     uuid:d9726315-bc91-430b-9ed8-ce5ffb858a85
4329   </wsa:RelatesTo>
4330 </s:Header>
4331 <s:Body>
4332   <s:Fault>
4333     <s:Code>
4334       <s:Value> [Code] </s:Value>
4335       <s:Subcode>
4336         <s:Value> [Subcode] </s:Value>
4337       </s:Subcode>
4338     </s:Code>
4339     <s:Reason>
4340       <s:Text xml:lang="en"> [Reason] </s:Text>
4341     </s:Reason>
4342     <s:Detail>
4343       [Detail]
4344     </s:Detail>
4345   </s:Fault>
4346 </s:Body>
  
```

4348 **R11.2-2:** The following describes additional, normative constraints on the outline  
 4349 listed above:

4350 s:Envelope/s:Header/wsa:Action

4351 MUST be a valid fault Action URI from the relevant specification which defined the fault.

4352 s:Envelope/s:Header/wsa:MessageId

4353 MUST be present for the fault, like any non-fault message.

## Web Services for Management

- 4354 s:Envelope/s:Header/wsa:RelatesTo  
4355 MUST, like any other reply, contain the MessageID of the original request which caused the fault.
- 4356 s:Body/s:Fault/s:Value  
4357 MUST be either s:Sender or s:Receiver, as specified in the Master Fault Table under the "Code"  
4358 entry.
- 4359 s:Body/s:Fault/s:Subcode/s:Value  
4360 For WS-Management-related messages, MUST be one of the subcode QNames defined in the  
4361 Master Fault Table. If the service exposes custom methods or other messaging, this of course may  
4362 be another QName not in the Master Fault Table.
- 4363 s:Body/s:Fault/s:Reason  
4364 This OPTIONAL element SHOULD contain localized text explaining the fault in more detail.  
4365 Typically, this is extracted from the "Reason" field of the Master Fault Table. However, the text may  
4366 be adjusted to reflect a specific circumstance. This element may be repeated for each language.  
4367 Note that the xml:lang attribute MUST be present.
- 4368 s:Body/s:Fault/s:Detail  
4369 This OPTIONAL element SHOULD reflect the RECOMMENDED content from the Master Fault  
4370 Table.
- 4371 The above fault template is populated by examining entries from the Master Fault Table in section 11.6,  
4372 which includes all relevant faults from WS-Management and its underlying specifications.
- 4373 Note that s:Reason and s:Detail are always optional, but recommended, and that s:Reason must contain  
4374 an xml:lang attribute to indicate the language used in the descriptive text.
- 4375 **R11.2-3:** Note that fault wsa:Action URI values vary from fault to fault. The service  
4376 MUST issue a fault using the correct URI, based on the specification which  
4377 defined the fault. Faults defined in this specification must have the URI  
4378 value:
- 4379 **`http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/fault`**
- 4380 The Master Fault Table in section 11.6 contains the relevant wsa:Action URIs which apply. The URI  
4381 values are directly implied by the QName for the fault.

### 4382 11.3 NotUnderstood Faults

- 4383 There is a special case for faults relating to mustUnderstand attributes on SOAP headers. SOAP  
4384 specifications define the fault differently than the encoding in section 11.2. See 5.4.8 in reference [4]. In  
4385 practice, the fault only varies in indicating the SOAP header that was not understood, the QName, and  
4386 the namespace (line 3):  
4387

```
4388 X <s:Envelope xmlns:s="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope"  
4389 X   xmlns:wsa="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing">  
4390 X  
4391 X   <s:Header>  
4392 X     <s:NotUnderstood qname="QName of header" xmlns:ns="XML namespace of header"/>  
4393 X     <wsa:Action>  
4394 X       http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing/fault  
4395 X     </wsa:Action>  
4396 X     <wsa:MessageID>  
4397 X       uuid:d9726315-bc91-430b-9ed8-ce5ffb858a87
```

```

4398 </wsa:MessageID>
4399 <wsa:RelatesTo>
4400     uuid:d9726315-bc91-430b-9ed8-ce5ffb858a85
4401 </wsa:RelatesTo>
4402 </s:Header>
4403
4404 <s:Body>
4405     <s:Fault>
4406         <s:Code>
4407             <s:Value>s:MustUnderstand</s:Value>
4408         </s:Code>
4409         <s:Reason>
4410             <s:Text xml:lang="en-US">Header not understood</s:Text>
4411         </s:Reason>
4412     </s:Fault>
4413 </s:Body>
4414
4415 </s:Envelope>

```

4416 The fault template shown above may be used in all cases of failure to process mustUnderstand attributes.  
4417 Lines 5-8 show the important content, indicating which header was not understood and including a  
4418 generic wsa:Action specifying that the current message is a fault.

4419 The wsa:RelatesTo should be included so that the client can correlate the fault with the original request.  
4420 Over transports other than HTTP in which requests may be interlaced, this may be the only way to  
4421 respond to the correct sender.

4422 If the original wsa:MessageID itself is faulty and the connection is request-response oriented, the service  
4423 MAY attempt to send back a fault without the wsa:MessageID and wsa:RelatesTo fields, or may simply  
4424 fail to respond, as discussed in section 11.4.

#### 4425 **11.4 Degenerate Faults**

4426 In rare cases, the SOAP message may not contain enough information to properly generate a fault. For  
4427 example, if the wsa:MessageID is garbled, the service will have difficulty returning a fault which  
4428 references the original message. Some transports may not be able to reference the sender to return the  
4429 fault.

4430 If the transport guarantees a simple request-response pattern, then the service MAY send back a fault  
4431 with no wsa:RelatesTo field. However, in some cases, there is no guarantee that the sender can be  
4432 reached (for example, the wsa:FaultTo contains an invalid address, so there is no way to deliver the  
4433 fault).

4434 In all cases, the service SHOULD revert to the rules of section 10.4, in which no response is sent. The  
4435 service SHOULD attempt to log the requests in some way to help identify the defective client.

#### 4436 **11.5 Fault Extensibility**

4437 A service may include additional fault information beyond what is defined in this specification. The  
4438 appropriate extension element is the s:Detail element, and the service-specific XML may appear at any  
4439 location within this element, provided that it is properly mapped to an XML namespace which defines the  
4440 schema for that content. WS-Management makes use of this extension technique for the  
4441 wsman:FaultDetail URI values:  
4442

## Web Services for Management

```
4443 (1) <s:Detail>
4444 (2)   <wsman:FaultDetail>... </wsman:FaultDetail>
4445 (3)   <ExtensionData xmlns="vendor-specific-namespace">...</ExtensionData>
4446 (4)   ...
4447 (5) </s:Detail>
```

4448 The extension data elements may appear before or after any WS-Management-specific extensions  
4449 mandated by this specification. More than one extension element is permitted.

### 4450 11.6 Master Fault Table

4451 This section includes all faults from this specification and all underlying specifications. This list should be  
4452 taken as the normative fault list for WS-Management.

4453 **R11.6-1:** A service MUST return faults from the following list when the operation that  
4454 caused them was a message in this specification for which faults are  
4455 specified. A conformant service MAY return other faults for messages  
4456 which are not part of WS-Management.

4457 It is critical to client interoperability that the same fault be used in identical error cases. If each service  
4458 returns a distinct fault for "Not Found", constructing interoperable clients will be impossible. In the tables  
4459 that follow, the source specification of a fault is based on its QName.

4460 The list is alphabetized on the primary subcode name, regardless of the namespace prefix.

#### 4461 11.6.1 wsman:AccessDenied

Fault Subcode	wsman:AccessDenied
Action URI	<a href="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/fault">http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/fault</a>
Code	s:Sender
Reason	The sender was not authorized to access the resource.
Detail	None
Comments	This is returned generically for all access denials relating to authentication or authorization failures. This should not be used to indicate locking or concurrency conflicts or other types of denials unrelated to security by itself.
Applicability	Any message
Remedy	Client must acquire the correct credentials and retry the operation.

#### 4462 11.6.2 wsa:ActionNotSupported

Fault Subcode	wsa:ActionNotSupported
Action URI	<a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing/fault">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing/fault</a>
Code	s:Sender
Reason	The action is not supported by the service.
Detail	<s:Detail> <wsa:Action> <i>Incorrect Action URI</i> </wsa:Action> </s:Detail> <!-- The unsupported Action URI is returned, if possible -->

Comments	<p>This means that the requested action is not supported by the implementation.</p> <p>As an example, read-only implementations (supporting only wxf:Get, wsen:Enumerate) will return this for any other operations besides these two.</p> <p>If the implementation never supports the action, the fault should be generated as shown above. However, if the implementation supports the action in a general sense, but it is not an appropriate match for the resource, an additional detail code may be added to the fault, as follows:</p> <pre>&lt;s:Detail&gt;   &lt;wsa:Action&gt; <i>The offending Action URI</i> &lt;/wsa:Action&gt; &lt;wsman:FaultDetail&gt;</pre> <p><b>http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/ActionMismatch</b></p> <pre>&lt;/wsman:FaultDetail&gt; &lt;/s:Detail&gt;</pre> <p>This situation can occur when the implementation supports wxf:Put, for example, but the client attempts to update a read-only resource.</p>
Applicability	All messages
Remedy	Client must consult metadata provided by the service to determine which operations are supported.

4463 **11.6.3 wsman:AlreadyExists**

Fault Subcode	wsman:AlreadyExists
Action URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/fault
Code	s:Sender
Reason	The sender attempted to create a resource which already exists.
Detail	none
Comments	This is returned in cases where the user attempted to create a resource which already exists.
Applicability	wxf:Create
Remedy	Client use wxf:Put or create a resource with a different identity.

4464 **11.6.4 wsen:CannotProcessFilter**

Fault Subcode	wsen:CannotProcessFilter
Action URI	http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/enumeration/fault
Code	s:Sender
Reason	The requested filter could not be processed.
Detail	<pre>&lt;s:Detail&gt;   &lt;s:Text xml:lang="en"&gt; Explanation of why filter cannot be processed &lt;/s:Text&gt; &lt;/s:Detail&gt;</pre>

## Web Services for Management

Comments	This is typically returned for syntax errors or other semantic problems with the filter.  If the filter is valid, but the service cannot execute the filter due to misconfiguration, lack of resources, or other service-related problems, more specific faults should be returned, such as wsman:QuotaLimit or wsman:InternalError.
Applicability	wsen:Enumerate
Remedy	Client fixes the filter problem and tries again.

### 4465 11.6.5 wsman:Concurrency

Fault Subcode	wsman:Concurrency
Action URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/fault
Code	s:Sender
Reason	The action could not be completed due to concurrency or locking problems.
Detail	
Comments	This means that the requested action could not be carried out due to either internal concurrency or locking problems or because another user is accessing the resource.  This may occur if a resource is being enumerated using wsen:Enumerate and another client attempts operations such as wxf:Delete, which would affect the result of the enumeration in progress.
Applicability	All messages
Remedy	Client must wait and retry.

### 4466 11.6.6 wse:DeliveryModeRequestedUnavailable

Fault Subcode	wse:DeliveryModeRequestedUnavailable
Action URI	http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/fault
Code	s:Sender
Reason	The requested delivery mode is not supported.
Detail	<s:Detail>  <wse:SupportedDeliveryMode>... </wse:SupportedDeliveryMode>  <wse:SupportedDeliveryMode>...</wse:SupportedDeliveryMode>  ... </s:Detail>  <!-- This is a simple, optional list of one or more supported delivery mode URIs. It may be left empty. -->
Comments	This is returned for unsupported delivery modes for the specified resource.  If the stack supports the delivery mode in general, but not for the specific resource, this fault is still returned.  Other resources may support the delivery mode. The fault does not imply that the delivery mode is not supported by the implementation.

Applicability	wse:Subscribe
Remedy	Client should select one of the supported delivery modes.

4467 **11.6.7 wsman:DeliveryRefused**

Fault Subcode	wsman:DeliveryRefused
Action URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/fault
Code	s:Receiver
Reason	The receiver refuses to accept delivery of events and requests that the subscription be canceled.
Detail	none
Comments	This is returned by event receivers to force a cancellation of a subscription.  This can happen when the client tried to Unsubscribe, but failed, or when the client lost knowledge of active subscriptions and does not want to keep receiving events it no longer owns. This can help cleanup spurious or leftover subscriptions when clients are reconfigured or reinstalled and their previous subscriptions are still active.
Applicability	Any event delivery message in any mode
Remedy	The service should cease delivering events for the subscription and cancel the subscription, sending any applicable wse:SubscriptionEnd messages.

4468 **11.6.8 wsa:DestinationUnreachable**

Fault Subcode	wsa:DestinationUnreachable
Action URI	http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing/fault
Code	s:Sender
Reason	No route can be determined to reach the destination role defined by the WS-Addressing To.
Detail	<pre> &lt;s:Detail&gt;   &lt;s:Text xml:lang="en"&gt;     Explanation of why endpoint cannot be reached   &lt;/s:Text&gt;   &lt;!-- The following elements are optional --&gt;   &lt;wsman:FaultDetail&gt; one of the URI values below &lt;/wsman:FaultDetail&gt;   ...any service-specific additional XML content... &lt;/s:Detail&gt; </pre> <p>When the default addressing model is in use, the wsman:FaultDetail field may contain <b>http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InvalidResourceURI</b>.</p>

## Web Services for Management

Comments	This is returned as the general "Not Found" case for a resource, in which the resource endpoint reference cannot be mapped to the real-world resource.  This fault is NOT used merely to indicate the resource is temporarily offline, which is indicated by <code>wsa:EndpointUnavailable</code> .
Applicability	All request messages
Remedy	Client should attempt to diagnose the version of the service, query any metadata, and perform other diagnostic operations to determine why the request cannot be routed.

### 4469 11.6.9 wsman:EncodingLimit

Fault Subcode	<code>wsman:EncodingLimit</code>
---------------	----------------------------------

Action URI	<code>http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/fault</code>
------------	---

Code	<code>s:Sender</code>
------	-----------------------

Reason	An internal encoding limit was exceeded in a request or would be violated if the message were processed.
--------	--

Detail	<code>&lt;s:Detail&gt;</code>
--------	-------------------------------

`<wsman:FaultDetail>`

Optional; one of the enumeration values below

`</wsman:FaultDetail>`

`<s:Text>`

Optional text description of the limit violation

`</s:Text>`

...any service-specific additional XML content...

`</s:Detail>`

Possible enumeration values in the `<wsman:FaultDetail>` element:

**`http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/URILimitExceeded`**  
(URI was too long)

**`http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/MaxEnvelopeSize`**  
(The requested maximum was too large)

**`http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/MaxEnvelopeSizeExceeded`**  
(The computed response is too large based on the client limit, but operation was read-only or never executed to start with)

**`http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/ServiceEnvelopeLimit`**  
(Service reached its own internal limit when computing response)

**http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/SelectorLimit**  
 (Used when the default addressing format is in use and indicates that too many Selectors were used for the corresponding ResourceURI)

**http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/OptionLimit**  
 (Too many Options)

**http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/CharacterSet**  
 (Unsupported character set)

**http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/UnreportableSuccess**  
 (Operation succeeded and cannot be reversed, but result is too large to send)

**http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/Whitespace**  
 (Client-side whitespace usage is not supported)

**http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/EncodingType**  
 (Used for unsupported MTOM or other encoding types)

Comments This is returned when a system limit is exceeded, whether a published limit or a service-specific limit.

Applicability All request messages

Remedy Client should be reconfigured to send messages which fit the encoding limits of the service.

4470 **11.6.10 wsa:EndpointUnavailable**

Fault Subcode	wsa:EndpointUnavailable
---------------	-------------------------

Action URI	http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing/fault
------------	--

Code	s:Receiver
------	------------

Reason	The specified endpoint is currently unavailable.
--------	--

Detail	<pre> &lt;s:Detail&gt;   &lt;wsa:RetryAfter&gt; xs:duration &lt;/wsa:RetryAfter&gt;    &lt;!-- optional --&gt;   ...optional service-specific XML content   &lt;wsman:FaultDetail&gt; A detail URI value &lt;/wsman:FaultDetail&gt; &lt;/s:Detail&gt;                     </pre>
--------	--

In cases where the default addressing model is in used, the following fault detail codes may be returned:

**http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InvalidResourceURI**  
 Used when the ResourceURI is not known.

**http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InvalidValues**

## Web Services for Management

Used when the Selector values do not match a known resource.

Comments This is returned if the message was correct and the EPR was valid, but the specified resource is offline.

In practice , it is difficult for a service to distinguish between "Not Found" cases and "Offline" cases. In general, wse:DestinationUnreachable is preferable.

Applicability All request messages

Remedy Client can retry later, after the resource is again online.

### 4471 11.6.11 wse:EventSourceUnableToProcess

Fault Subcode wse:EventSourceUnableToProcess

Action URI <http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/fault>

Code s:Sender

Reason The event source cannot process the subscription.

Detail <s:Detail>

<s:Text>

Text description of why subscription cannot be processed

</s:Text>

<wsman:FaultDetail> .... </wsman:FaultDetail>

...any service-specific additional XML content...

</s:Detail>

The wsman:FaultDetail code may be set to **<http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/UnusableAddress>**.

Comments This should be limited to cases where the event filter contains syntax or semantic errors, or the wse:NotifyTo address is not usable because it is incorrect or permissions cannot be acquired for event delivery.

It should *not* be used to report other internal failures such as resource limits, internal service errors, "Server Busy", "Access Denied", or any other more specific faults which provide more information to the client.

Applicability wse:Subscribe

Remedy Client should repair the filter syntax.

### 4472 11.6.12 wsen:FilterDialectRequestedUnavailable

Fault Subcode wsen:FilterDialectRequestedUnavailable

Action URI <http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/enumeration/fault>

Code s:Sender

Reason The requested filtering dialect is not supported.

Detail	<s:Detail> <wsen:SupportedDialect> .... </wsen:SupportedDialect> + </s:Detail>
Comments	This is returned when the client requests a filter type or query language not supported by the service.  The filter dialect may vary from resource to resource, or may apply to the entire service.
Applicability	wsen:Enumerate
Remedy	Client must switch to a supported dialect or perform a simple enumeration with no filter.

4473 **11.6.13 wse:FilteringNotSupported**

Fault Subcode	wse:FilteringNotSupported
Action URI	http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/fault
Code	s:Sender
Reason	Filtering over the event source is not supported.
Detail	none
Comments	Returned when the service does not support filtered subscriptions for the specified event source, but only supports simple delivery of all events for the resource.  Note that the service may support filtering over a different event resource, or may not support filtering for <i>any</i> resource. The same fault applies.
Applicability	wse:Subscribe
Remedy	Client must subscribe using unfiltered delivery.

4474 **11.6.14 wsen:FilteringNotSupported**

Fault Subcode	wsen:FilteringNotSupported
Action URI	http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/enumeration/fault
Code	s:Sender
Reason	Filtered enumeration is not supported.
Detail	
Comments	Returned when the service does not support filtering of enumerations at all, but only supports simple enumeration. If enumeration as a whole is not supported, then the correct fault is wsa:ActionNotSupported.  Note that the service may support filtering over a different enumerable resource, or may not support filtering for <i>any</i> resource. The same fault applies.
Applicability	wsen:Enumerate
Remedy	Client must switch to a simple enumeration.

## Web Services for Management

### 4475 11.6.15 wse:FilteringRequestedUnavailable

Fault Subcode	wse:FilteringRequestedUnavailable
Action URI	http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/fault
Code	s:Sender
Reason	The requested filter dialect is not supported.
Detail	<pre>&lt;s:Detail&gt;   &lt;wse:SupportedDialect&gt;.. &lt;/wse:SupportedDialect&gt; +   &lt;wsman:FaultDetail&gt; ..the URI below, if applicable &lt;/wsman:FaultDetail&gt; &lt;/s:Detail&gt;</pre> <p>Possible URI value: <a href="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/FilteringRequired">http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/FilteringRequired</a></p>
Comments	<p>This is returned when the client requests a filter dialect not supported by the service.</p> <p>In some cases, a subscription <i>requires</i> a filter because the result of an unfiltered subscription may be infinite or extremely large. In these cases, the <a href="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/FilteringRequired">http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/FilteringRequired</a> needs to be included in the s:Detail element.</p>
Applicability	wse:Subscribe
Remedy	Client must switch to a supported filter dialect or use no filtering.

### 4476 11.6.16 wsman:InternalError

Fault Subcode	wsman:InternalError
Action URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/fault
Code	s:Receiver
Reason	The service cannot comply with the request due to internal processing errors.
Detail	<pre>&lt;s:Detail&gt;   &lt;s:Text&gt;     &lt;!-- Text description of internal failure or system-specific error codes and text --&gt;   &lt;/s:Text&gt;   ...service-specific extension XML elements.... &lt;/s:Detail&gt;</pre>
Comments	<p>This is a generic error for capturing internal processing errors within the service. For example, this is the correct fault if the service cannot load necessary executable images, its configuration is corrupted, hardware is not operating properly, or any unknown or unexpected internal errors occur.</p> <p>It is expected that the service must be reconfigured, restarted, or reinstalled, so merely asking the client to retry will not succeed.</p>
Applicability	All messages

Remedy Client must repair the service out-of-band to WS-Management.

4477 **11.6.17 wsman:FragmentDialectNotSupported**

Fault Subcode	wsman:FragmentDialectNotSupported
Action URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/fault
Code	s:Receiver
Reason	The requested fragment filtering dialect or language is not supported.
Detail	<pre>&lt;s:Detail&gt;   &lt;wsman:FragmentDialect&gt; xs:anyURI &lt;/wsman:FragmentDialect&gt;   &lt;wsman:FragmentDialect&gt; xs:anyURI &lt;/wsman:FragmentDialect&gt;   .... &lt;/s:Detail&gt;</pre>

*The above optional URI values indicate supported dialects.*

Comments This is returned when the service does not support the requested fragment-level filtering dialect.

If the implementation supports the fragment dialect in general, but not for the specific resource, this fault is still returned.

Other resources may support the fragment dialect. This fault does not imply that the fragment dialect is not supported by the implementation.

Applicability wsen:Enumerate, wxf:Get, wxf:Create, wxf:Put, wxf>Delete

Remedy Client must use a supported filtering dialect or no filtering.

4478

4479 **11.6.18 wsman:InvalidBookmark**

Fault Subcode	wsman:InvalidBookmark
Action URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/fault
Code	s:Sender
Reason	The bookmark supplied with the subscription is not valid.
Detail	<pre>&lt;s:Detail&gt;   &lt;wsman:FaultDetail&gt;     If possible, one of the following URI values   &lt;/wsman:FaultDetail&gt; &lt;/s:Detail&gt;</pre>

Possible URI values:

## Web Services for Management

	<a href="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/Expired">http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/Expired</a>
	<a href="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/Invalid">http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/Invalid</a>
Comments	This is returned if a bookmark has expired, is corrupt, or is otherwise unknown. If the service cannot detect "Expired" bookmarks, "Invalid" may always be returned.
Applicability	wsen:Subscribe
Remedy	Client must issue a new subscription without bookmarks at all or locate the correct bookmark.

### 4480 11.6.19 wsen:InvalidEnumerationContext

Fault Subcode	wsen:InvalidEnumerationContext
Action URI	<a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/enumeration/fault">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/enumeration/fault</a>
Code	s:Receiver
Reason	The supplied enumeration context is invalid.
Detail	None
Comments	<p>An invalid enumeration context was supplied with the message. Typically, this will happen with a wsen:Pull.</p> <p>The enumeration context may be invalid due to expiration, an invalid format, or reuse of an old context no longer being tracked by the service.</p> <p>The service also can return this for any case where the enumerator has been terminated unilaterally on the service side, although one of the more descriptive faults is preferable, since this usually happens on out-of-memory errors (wsman:QuotaLimit), authorization failures (wsman:AccessDenied) or internal errors (wsman:InternalError).</p>
Applicability	wsen:Pull, wsen:Release (whether a pull-mode subscription, or a normal enumeration)
Remedy	Client must abandon the enumeration and let the service time it out, as wsen:Release will fail as well.

### 4481 11.6.20 wse:InvalidExpirationTime

Fault Subcode	wse:InvalidExpirationTime
Action URI	<a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/fault">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/fault</a>
Code	s:Sender
Reason	The expiration time is not valid.
Detail	none
Comments	<p>Expiration time is not valid at all or within the limits of the service.</p> <p>Used for outright errors (expirations in the past, etc.) or expirations too far into the future.</p> <p>If the service does not support expiration times at all, then a wsman:UnsupportedFeature fault should be returned with the correct detail code.</p>
Applicability	wse:Subscribe

Remedy Client issues a new subscription with a supported expiration time.

4482 **11.6.21 wsen:InvalidExpirationTime**

Fault Subcode	wsen:InvalidExpirationTime
Action URI	<a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/enumeration/fault">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/enumeration/fault</a>
Code	s:Sender
Reason	The expiration time is not valid.
Detail	none
Comments	Since WS-Management recommends against implementing the wsen:Expiration feature, this fault should not occur with most implementations.  Consult the WS-Enumeration specification for more information.
Applicability	wsen:Enumerate
Remedy	N/A

4483 **11.6.22 wse:InvalidMessage**

Fault Subcode	wse:InvalidMessage
Action URI	<a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/fault">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/fault</a>
Code	s:Sender
Reason	The request message has unknown or invalid content and cannot be processed.
Detail	<s:Detail> <s:Text> ...identify the problem either with text or XML fragments </s:Text> </s:Detail>
Comments	Generally not used in WS-Management, although it MAY be used for cases not covered by other faults.  If the content violates the schema, a wsman:SchemaValidationError fault should be sent. If specific errors occur in the subscription body, one of the more descriptive faults should be used.  This should not be used to indicate unsupported features, only unexpected or unknown content in violation of this specification.
Applicability	WS-Eventing request messages
Remedy	Client has a defect which should be corrected to issue valid messages which comply with this specification.

4484 **11.6.23 wsa:InvalidMessageInformationHeader**

Fault Subcode	wsa:InvalidMessageInformationHeader
Action URI	<a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing/fault">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing/fault</a>
Code	s:Sender
Reason	A message information header is not valid and the message cannot be processed.

## Web Services for Management

Detail	<s:Detail> ...the invalid header... </s:Detail>
Comments	<p>This may occur with any type of SOAP header error. The header may be invalid in terms of schema or value, or may constitute a semantic error.</p> <p>This should not be used to indicate an invalid resource address (a "not found" condition for the resource), but to indicate actual structural violations of the SOAP header rules in this specification.</p> <p>Examples are repeated MessageIDs, missing RelatesTo on a response, badly formed addresses, or any other missing header content.</p>
Applicability	All messages
Remedy	Major client defect. The SOAP packets are not correctly formed.

### 4485 11.6.24 wsman:InvalidOptions

Fault Subcode	wsman:InvalidOptions
Action URI	<a href="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/fault">http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/fault</a>
Code	s:Sender
Reason	One or more options are not valid.
Detail	<s:Detail> <wsman:FaultDetail> If possible, one of the following URI values </wsman:FaultDetail> </s:Detail>  Possible URI values: <a href="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/NotSupported">http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/NotSupported</a> <a href="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InvalidName">http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InvalidName</a> <a href="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InvalidValue">http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InvalidValue</a>
Comments	This generically covers all cases where the option names or values are not valid, or they are used in incorrect combinations.
Applicability	All request messages
Remedy	Client should retrieve the catalog entry for the resource and determine how to correct the invalid option values.

### 4486 11.6.25 wsman:InvalidParameter

Fault Subcode	wsman:InvalidParameter
Action URI	<a href="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/fault">http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/fault</a>
Code	s:Sender

Reason	An operation parameter is not valid.
Detail	<pre>&lt;s:Detail&gt;   &lt;wsman:FaultDetail&gt;     If possible, one of the following URI values   &lt;/wsman:FaultDetail&gt; &lt;/s:Detail&gt;</pre> <p>Possible URI values:  <a href="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/TypeMismatch">http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/TypeMismatch</a>  <a href="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InvalidName">http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InvalidName</a></p>
Comments	<p>Returned when a parameter to a custom action is not valid.</p> <p>This is a default for new implementations which need to have a generic fault for this case. The method may also return any specific fault of its own.</p>
Applicability	All messages with custom actions
Remedy	Client should consult the WSDL for the operation and determine how to supply the correct parameter.

4487 **11.6.26 wxf:InvalidRepresentation**

Fault Subcode	wxf:InvalidRepresentation
Action URI	<a href="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/transfer/fault">http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/transfer/fault</a>
Code	s:Sender
Reason	The XML content is not valid.
Detail	<pre>&lt;s:Detail&gt;   &lt;wsman:FaultDetail&gt;     If possible, one of the following URI values   &lt;/wsman:FaultDetail&gt; &lt;/s:Detail&gt;</pre> <p>Possible URI values:  <a href="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InvalidValues">http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InvalidValues</a>  <a href="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/MissingValues">http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/MissingValues</a>  <a href="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InvalidNamespace">http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InvalidNamespace</a>  <a href="http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InvalidFragment">http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InvalidFragment</a></p>
Comments	<p>This may be returned when the input XML is not valid semantically or uses the wrong schema for the resource.</p> <p>However, a wsman:SchemaValidationError fault should be returned if the error is related to XML schema violations as such, as opposed to invalid semantic values.</p> <p>Note the anomalous case where a schema violation does not occur, but the</p>

## Web Services for Management

namespace is simply the wrong one, in which <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InvalidNamespace> is returned.

Applicability wxf:Put, wxf:Create

Remedy This is a client defect. The client should correct the input XML.

### 4488 11.6.27 wsman:InvalidSelectors

Fault Subcode wsman:InvalidSelectors

Action URI <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/fault>

Code s:Sender

Reason The Selectors for the resource are not valid.

Detail <s:Detail>

<wsman:FaultDetail>

If possible, one of the following URI values

</wsman:FaultDetail>

</s:Detail>

Possible URI values:

<http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InsufficientSelectors>

<http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/UnexpectedSelectors>

<http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/TypeMismatch>

<http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InvalidValue>

<http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/AmbiguousSelectors>

<http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/DuplicateSelectors>

Comments This covers all cases where the specified Selectors were incorrect or unknown for the specified resource.

Applicability All request messages

Remedy Client should retrieve documentation or metadata and correct the Selectors.

### 4489 11.6.28 wsa:MessageInformationHeaderRequired

Fault Subcode wsa:MessageInformationHeaderRequired

Action URI <http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/addressing/fault>

Code s:Sender

Reason A required header is missing.

Detail <s:Detail>

The XML QName of the missing header

</s:Detail>

Comments A required message information header, To, MessageID, or Action, is not present.

Applicability All messages  
 Remedy This is a major client defect. The SOAP packets are not correctly formed.

4490 **11.6.29 wsman:NoAck**

Fault Subcode	wsman:NoAck
Action URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/fault
Code	s:Sender
Reason	The receiver did not acknowledge the event delivery.
Detail	None
Comments	This is returned when the client (subscriber) receives an event with a wsman:AckRequested header and does not (or cannot) acknowledge the receipt. The service should cease sending events and terminate the subscription.
Applicability	Any event delivery action (including heartbeats, dropped events, etc.) in any delivery mode
Remedy	For subscribers, the subscription must be resubmitted without the acknowledgement option.  For services delivering events, the service should cancel the subscription immediately.

4491 **11.6.30 wsman:QuotaLimit**

Fault Subcode	wsman:QuotaLimit
Action URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/fault
Code	s:Sender
Reason	The service is busy servicing other requests.
Detail	<s:Detail> <s:Text> reason </s:Text> </s:Detail>
Comments	This is returned when the SOAP message is otherwise correct, but the service has reached a resource or quota limit.
Applicability	All messages
Remedy	Client can retry later.

4492 **11.6.31 wsman:SchemaValidationError**

Fault Subcode	wsman:SchemaValidationError
Action URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/fault
Code	s:Sender
Reason	The supplied SOAP violates the corresponding XML schema definition.
Detail	<s:Detail>

## Web Services for Management

<s:Text>

Service-specific error messages about the schema violation.

</s:Text>

</s:Detail>

Comments Used for any XML parsing failure or schema violations.

Note that full validation of the SOAP against schemas is not expected in real-time, but processors may in fact notice schema violations, such as type mismatches. In all of these cases, this fault applies.

In debugging modes where validation is occurring, this should be returned for *all* errors noted by the validating parser.

Applicability All messages

Remedy Client corrects the message.

### 4493 11.6.32 wsen:TimedOut

Fault Subcode wsen:TimedOut

Action URI <http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/enumeration/fault>

Code s:Receiver

Reason The enumerator has timed out and is no longer valid.

Detail none

Comments This should not be used in WS-Management due to overlap with the wsman:TimedOut, which covers all the other messages.

Applicability wsen:Pull

Remedy The client can retry the wsen:Pull.

### 4494 11.6.33 wsman:TimedOut

Fault Subcode wsman:TimedOut

Action URI <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/fault>

Code s:Receiver

Reason The operation has timed out.

Detail none

Comments The operation could not be completed within the wsman:OperationTimeout value or else an internal override timeout was reached by the service while trying to process the request.

This is also returned in all enumerations when no content is available for the current wsen:Pull request. Clients may simply retry the wsen:Pull again until a different fault is returned.

Applicability All requests

Remedy Client may retry the operation.

If the operation was a write (delete, create, execute), the client should consult the system operation log before blindly attempting a retry, or attempt a wxf:Get or other read operation to try to discover the result of the previous operation.

#### 4495 **11.6.34 wse:UnableToRenew**

Fault Subcode	wse:UnableToRenew
Action URI	http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/fault
Code	s:Sender
Reason	The subscription could not be renewed.
Detail	<s:Detail> <s:Text> Optional service-specific error messages about why the Renew failed </s:Text> </s:Detail>
Comments	This is returned in all cases where the subscription cannot be renewed, but is otherwise valid.
Applicability	wse:Renew
Remedy	Client must issue a new subscription.

#### 4496 **11.6.35 wse:UnsupportedExpirationType**

Fault Subcode	wse:UnsupportedExpirationType
Action URI	http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/08/eventing/fault
Code	s:Sender
Reason	The specified expiration type is not supported.
Detail	none
Comments	A specific time for expiration (as opposed to duration) is not supported. This fault should not be used if the value itself is incorrect, only if the <i>type</i> is not supported.
Applicability	wse:Subscribe
Remedy	Client corrects the expiration to use a duration time.

#### 4497 **11.6.36 wsen:UnsupportedExpirationType**

Fault Subcode	wsen:UnsupportedExpirationType
Action URI	http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2004/09/enumeration/fault
Code	s:Sender
Reason	The specified expiration type is not supported.
Detail	none
Comments	The specified expiration type is not supported. For example, a specific time-based expiration type may not be supported (as opposed to a duration-based expiration

## Web Services for Management

type).

This fault should not be used if the value itself is incorrect, but only if the *type* is not supported.

Applicability wsen:Enumerate

Remedy Client corrects the expiration time or omits it and retries.

### 4498 11.6.37 wsman:UnsupportedFeature

Fault Subcode	wsman:UnsupportedFeature
Action URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/fault
Code	s:Sender
Reason	The specified feature is not supported.
Detail	<s:Detail> <wsman:FaultDetail> If possible, one of the following URI values </wsman:FaultDetail> </s:Detail>

Possible URI values:

http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/AuthorizationMode  
http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/AddressingMode  
http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/Ack  
http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/OperationTimeout  
http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/Locale  
http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/ExpirationTime  
http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/FragmentLevelAccess  
http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/DeliveryRetries  
http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/Heartbeats  
http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/Bookmarks  
http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/MaxElements  
http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/MaxTime  
http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/MaxEnvelopeSize  
http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/MaxEnvelopePolicy  
http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/FilteringRequired  
http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InsecureAddress  
http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/FormatMismatch  
http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/FormatSecurityToken  
http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/AsynchronousRequest  
http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/MissingValues  
http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InvalidValues  
http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/InvalidNamespace  
http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/faultDetail/OptionSet

Comments	Indicates that an unsupported feature was attempted.
Applicability	any message
Remedy	Client corrects or removes the unsupported feature request and retries.

## 4499 12 Appendix A: HTTP(S) Transport and Security Profile

### 4500 12.1 Introduction

4501 While WS-Management is a SOAP protocol and not tied to a specific network transport, interoperation  
4502 requires some common standards to be established. This specification centers on establishing common  
4503 usage over HTTP 1.1 and HTTPS. In addition to HTTP and HTTPS, this specification allows any SOAP-  
4504 enabled transport to be used as a carrier for WS-Management messages.

4505 For identification and referencing, each transport is identified by a URI, and each authentication  
4506 mechanism defined in this specification is also identified by a URI.

4507 As new transports are standardized, they should also acquire a URI for referencing purposes, and any  
4508 new authentication mechanisms that they expose should also be assigned URIs for publication and  
4509 identification purposes in XML documents.

4510 For interoperability, the standard transports are HTTP 1.1 and HTTPS (using TLS 1.0), designated as  
4511 follows:

- 4512 • <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2616.txt> (HTTP 1.1)
- 4513 • <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2818.txt> (HTTPS)

4514 The requirements mentioned in this section are for ensuring interoperation between WS-Management  
4515 implementations using HTTP 1.1 and HTTPS transports. As new transports are standardized for WS-  
4516 Management, the associated transport-specific requirements should be defined and published to ensure  
4517 interoperability.

4518 The SOAP and HTTP encoding models specified in the following base specifications are used for WS-  
4519 Management encoding over HTTP and HTTPS:

- 4520 • **SOAP Version 1.2 Part 2: Adjuncts**, SOAP HTTP binding described in section 7 of  
4521 <http://www.w3.org/TR/2003/REC-soap12-part2-20030624/#soapinhttp>
- 4522 • **WS-I Basic Profile Version 1.1**  
4523 <http://www.ws-i.org/Profiles/BasicProfile-1.1-2004-08-24.html>

4524 **R12.1-1:** A service SHOULD conform to any encoding requirements in the WS-I  
4525 Basic Profile Version 1.1, in addition to any requirements in this  
4526 specification.

4527 This increases the probability of successful interoperation between implementations.

### 4528 12.2 HTTP(S) Encoding

4529 **R12.2-1:** A service MUST support **Transfer-Encoding: chunked**.

4530 This requires the service to be able to receive incoming SOAP messages in several parts or deliver them  
4531 in several parts when they are very large or the size is unknown. The limits are service-specific.

4532 **R12.2-2** A service MUST at least support the SOAP HTTP binding.

4533 **R12.2-3:** A service MUST at least implement the Responding SOAP Node of the  
4534 SOAP **Request-Response** Message Exchange Pattern

## Web Services for Management

- 4535 (http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap/mep/request-response/).
- 4536 R12.2-4 A service MAY choose not to implement the Responding SOAP Node of  
4537 the SOAP **Response** Message Exchange Pattern  
4538 (http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap/mep/soap-response/).
- 4539 R12.2-5: A service MAY choose not to support the SOAP Web Method Feature.
- 4540 R12.2-6: A service MUST at least implement the Responding SOAP Node of an  
4541 HTTP one-way Message Exchange Pattern where the SOAP ENVELOPE  
4542 is carried in the HTTP Request and the HTTP Response has a Status Code  
4543 of 202 Accepted and an empty Entity Body (no SOAP ENVELOPE).
- 4544 This is used to carry SOAP messages which require no response.
- 4545 R12.2-7: A service MUST at least support Request Message SOAP ENVELOPEs  
4546 and one-way SOAP ENVELOPEs delivered using HTTP POST.
- 4547 R12.2-8: In cases where the service cannot respond with a SOAP message, the  
4548 HTTP error code 500 (Internal Server Error) SHOULD be returned and the  
4549 client side should close the connection.
- 4550 R12.2-9: For services which support HTTPS (TLS 1.0), the service MUST at least  
4551 implement TLS\_RSA\_WITH\_RC4\_128\_SHA. It is RECOMMENDED that  
4552 the service also support TLS\_RSA\_WITH\_AES\_128\_CBC\_SHA.
- 4553 R12.2-10: When delivering faults, an HTTP status code of 500 SHOULD be used  
4554 in the response for s:Receiver faults, and a code of 400 SHOULD be used  
4555 for s:Sender faults.
- 4556 R12.2-11: It is NOT a REQUIREMENT that the URL used with the HTTP-POST  
4557 operation to deliver the SOAP message have the same content as the  
4558 wsa:To URI used in the SOAP addressing. Often, the HTTP URL will have  
4559 the same content as the wsa:To URI in the message, but may additionally  
4560 contain other message routing fields suffixed to the network address using  
4561 a service-defined separator token sequence. It is RECOMMENDED that  
4562 services require only the wsa:To network address URL to promote uniform  
4563 client-side processing and behavior and to include service-level routing in  
4564 other parts of the address.
- 4565 R12.2-12: If the SOAPAction header is present in an HTTP/HTTPS-based request  
4566 which carries a SOAP message, it MUST match the wsa:Action URI  
4567 present in the SOAP message. The SOAPAction header is optional, and a  
4568 service MUST NOT fault a request if this header is missing.
- 4569 Since WS-Management is based on SOAP 1.2, the optional SOAPAction header is merely used as an  
4570 optimization. If present, it MUST match the wsa:Action URI used in the SOAP message. The service is  
4571 permitted to fault the request by simply examining the SOAPAction header if the action is not valid without  
4572 examining the SOAP content. However, the service may not fault the request if the SOAPAction header  
4573 is omitted.
- 4574 R12.2-13: If a service supports attachments, the service MUST support the HTTP  
4575 Transmission Optimization Feature.
- 4576 R12.2-14: If a service cannot process a message with an attachment or  
4577 unsupported encoding type, and the transport is HTTP or HTTPS, it MUST  
4578 return HTTP error 415 as its response (unsupported media).
- 4579 R12.2-15: If a service cannot process a message with an attachment or

4580 unsupported encoding type using transports other than HTTP/HTTPS, it  
4581 SHOULD return a wsman:EncodingLimit fault with a detail code of  
4582 wsman:EncodingType.

4583

### 4584 12.3 IPsec and HTTP

4585 **A special note** regarding the use of IPsec should be made. While HTTP with Basic authentication is  
4586 weak on an unsecured network, if IPsec is in use, this is no longer an issue. IPsec provides high-quality  
4587 cryptographic security, data origin authentication, and anti-replay services.

4588 From the network perspective, the use of HTTP Basic authentication when the traffic is carried over a  
4589 network secured by IPsec is intrinsically safe and equivalent to using HTTPS with server-side certificates.  
4590 For example, the wsman security profile  
4591 **http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/secprofile/https/mutual/rechallenge** (using HTTPS)  
4592 is equivalent to simple **http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/secprofile/http/basic** or  
4593 **http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/secprofile/http/digest** if the traffic is actually secured  
4594 by IPsec.

4595 Because IPsec is intended for machine-level authentication and network traffic protection, it is insufficient  
4596 for real-world management in many cases, which may require additional authentication of specific users  
4597 to authorize access to resource classes and instances. IPsec needs to be used in conjunction with one  
4598 of the profiles in this section for user-level authentication. However, it obviates the need for HTTPS-  
4599 based traffic and allows safe use of HTTP-based profiles.

### 4600 12.4 HTTP(S) Security Profiles

4601 This specification does not mandate that conformant services must provide HTTP or HTTPS-based  
4602 access. However, if HTTP or HTTPS is used, it does mandate that at least one of the predefined profiles  
4603 for that transport must be supported so that clients can reliably access the service.

4604 **R12.4-1:** A conformant service which supports HTTP MUST support one of the  
4605 predefined HTTP-based profiles.

4606 **R12.4-2:** A conformant service which supports HTTPS MUST support one of the  
4607 predefined HTTPS-based profiles.

4608 **R12.4-3:** A conformant service MUST NOT expose WS-Management over a  
4609 completely unauthenticated HTTP channel.

4610 There is no requirement that the service only export a single HTTP or HTTPS address. The service may  
4611 export multiple addresses, each of which supports a specific security profile or multiple profiles.

4612 If clients support all predefined profiles, they are assured of some form of secure access to a WS-  
4613 Management implementation which supports HTTP and/or HTTPS.

4614

### 4615 12.5 http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/secprofile/http/basic

4616 This essentially the "standard" profile, but limited to Basic authentication.

4617 The typical sequence is:

4618

## Web Services for Management

	Client		Service
1	Client connects with no auth header.	→	Service sees no header.
2		←	Service sends 401, listing Basic as the auth mode.
3	Client provides Basic authorization header.	→	Service authenticates the client.

4619 This is normal behavior for HTTP. If the client connects with a Basic authorization header initially and it is  
4620 valid, then of course the request immediately succeeds.

4621 Basic authentication is not recommended for unsecured transports. If used with HTTP alone, for  
4622 example, the transmission of the password constitutes a security risk. However, if the HTTP transport is  
4623 secured with IPSec, for example, then the risk is substantially reduced.

4624 Similarly, Basic authentication is suitable when performing testing, prototyping, or diagnosis.

### 4625 **12.6 <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/secprofile/http/digest>**

4626 This essentially the same as the "standard" profile, but limited to the use of Digest authentication.

4627 The typical sequence is:

4628

	Client		Service
1	Client connects with no auth header.	→	Service sees no header.
2		←	Service sends 401, listing Digest as the auth mode.
3	Client provides Digest authorization header.	→	
4		←	Service begins auth sequence of secure token exchange.
5	Client continues auth sequence....	→	Service authenticates client.

4629 This is normal behavior for HTTP. If the client connects with a Digest authorization header initially and it  
4630 is valid, then the token exchange sequence begins.

### 4631 **12.7 <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/secprofile/https/basic>**

4632 This profile establishes the use of Basic authentication over HTTPS. This is used when only a server-  
4633 side certificate encrypts the connection, but the service still needs to authenticate the client.

4634 The typical sequence is:

4635

	Client		Service
1	Client connects with no auth header using HTTPS.	→	Service sees no header, but establishes an encrypted connection.
2		←	Service sends 401, listing Basic as the auth mode.
3	Client provides Basic authorization header.	→	Service authenticates the client.

4636 If the client connects with a Basic authorization header initially and it is valid, then of course the request  
 4637 immediately succeeds.

4638 **12.8 <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/secprofile/https/digest>**

4639 This profile establishes the use of Digest authentication over HTTPS. This is used when only a server-  
 4640 side certificate encrypts the connection, but the service still needs to authenticate the client.

4641 The typical sequence is:

4642

	Client		Service
1	Client connects with no auth header using HTTPS.	→	Service sees no header, but establishes an encrypted connection.
2		←	Service sends 401, listing Digest as the auth mode.
3	Client provides Digest authorization header.	→	
4		←	Service begins auth sequence of secure token exchange.
5	Client continues auth sequence....	→	Service authenticates client.

4643 This is normal behavior for HTTP. If the client connects with a Digest authorization header initially and it  
 4644 is valid, then the token exchange sequence begins.

4645 **12.9 <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/secprofile/https/mutual>**

4646 In this security mode, the client supplies an X.509 certificate that is used to authenticate the client. No  
 4647 HTTP(S) authorization header is required in the HTTP POST request.

4648 However, as a hint to the service, the following HTTP(S) authorization header may be present:

4649 `Authorization: http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/secprofile/https/mutual`

4650 Since the service can be configured to always look for the certificate, this is not required.

4651 The sequence is simple:

4652

## Web Services for Management

	Client		Service
1	Client connects with no auth header but supplies an X.509 cert.	→	Service ignores the authorization header and retrieves the client-side cert used in the TLS 1.0 handshake.
2		←	Service accepts or denies access with 403.7 or 403.16, etc.

### 4653 12.10 <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/secprofile/https/mutual/basic> 4654 ic

4655 In this profile, the <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/secprofile/https/mutual> profile is used  
4656 first to authenticate both sides using X.509 certificates. Individual operations are subsequently  
4657 authenticated using HTTP Basic authorization headers.

4658 This profile authenticates both the client and service initially and provides one level of security, typically at  
4659 the machine or device level. The second level of authentication typically performs authorization for  
4660 specific operations, although it may act as a simple, secondary authentication mechanism with no  
4661 authorization semantics.  
4662

	Client		Service
1	Client connects with cert and special auth header.	→	Service queries for client cert and authenticates. If cert is missing or invalid, the sequence stops here with 403.7 or 403.16 return codes.
2		←	After authenticating the certificate, the service sends 401, listing available Basic auth mode as a requirement.
3	Client selects Basic as the auth mode to use and includes it in the Authorization header, as defined for HTTP 1.1.	→	Service authenticates the client again before performing the operation.

4663 In the initial request, the HTTPS authorization header MUST be as follows:

```
4664 Authorization:  
4665 http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/secprofile/https/mutual/basic
```

4666 This indicates to the service that this special mode is in use, and that it can query for the client certificate  
4667 to ensure that subsequent requests are properly challenged for Basic authorization if the HTTP  
4668 Authorization is header is missing from a request.

4669 The Authorization header is treated as normal HTTP basic:

```
4670 Authorization: Basic ...user/password encoding
```

4671 This use of Basic authentication is secure (unlike its normal use in HTTP), since the transmission of the  
4672 username and password is performed over a TLS 1.0 encrypted connection.

4673 **12.11 <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/secprofile/https/mutual/digest>**  
 4674 **est**

4675 This is the same as <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/secprofile/https/mutual/basic>, except  
 4676 that the HTTP Digest authentication model is used after the initial X.509 certificate-based mutual  
 4677 authentication is completed.

4678 In the initial request, the HTTPS authorization header MUST be as follows:

```
4679 Authorization:  
4680 http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/secprofile/https/mutual/digest
```

4681 **12.12 <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/secprofile/https/spnego-kerberos>**  
 4682 **kerberos**

4683 In this profile, the client connects to the server using HTTPS with only server-side certificates to encrypt  
 4684 the connection.

4685 Authentication is carried out based on the internet informational draft [22], which describes the use of  
 4686 GSSAPI SPNEGO over HTTP. This mechanism allows HTTP to carry out the negotiation protocol of  
 4687 RFC 2478 to authenticate the user based on Kerberos Version 5.  
 4688

	Client		Service
1	Client connects with no auth header using HTTPS.	➔	Service sees no header, but establishes an encrypted connection.
2		➔	Service sends 401, listing <b>Negotiate</b> as an available HTTP authentication mechanism.
3	Client uses the referenced Internet draft to start a SPNEGO sequence to negotiate for Kerberos V5.	➔	...
4	...	➔	Service engages in SPNEGO sequence to authenticate client using Kerberos V5.
5	Client is authenticated.	➔	Service authenticates client.

4689 **12.13 <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/secprofile/https/mutual/spnego-kerberos>**  
 4690 **nego-kerberos**

4691 This mode is the same as <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/secprofile/https/spnego-kerberos>  
 4692 except that the server and client mutually authenticate one another at the TLS layer prior to  
 4693 beginning the Kerberos authentication sequence. See [22] for details.  
 4694

## Web Services for Management

	Client		Service
1	Client connects with no auth header using HTTPS.	→	Service queries for client cert and authenticates. If cert is missing or invalid, the sequence stops here with 403.7 or 403.16 return codes.
2		←	After the mutual certificate authentication sequence, service sends 401, listing <b>Negotiate</b> as an available HTTP authentication mechanism.
3	Client uses the referenced Internet draft to start a SPNEGO sequence to negotiate for Kerberos V5.	→	...
4	...	←	Service engages in SPNEGO sequence to authenticate client using Kerberos V5.
5	Client is authenticated.	→	Service authenticates client.

4695 Typically, this is used to mutually authenticate devices or machines, and then subsequently perform user-  
4696 or role-based authentication.

### 4697 **12.14 http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/secprofile/http/spnego-** 4698 **kerberos**

4699 This is the same as <http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/wsman/1/wsman/secprofile/https/spnego-kerberos>  
4700 except that it is performed over an HTTP connection. See [22] for details.

4701 While this profile supports secure authentication, because it is not encrypted, it represents security risks  
4702 such as information disclosure because the SOAP traffic is in plain text. It should not be used in  
4703 environments with a requirement for a high level of security.

4704

## 4705 **13 Appendix B: XPath Support**

4706 Implementations will typically need to support XPath for several purposes, such as Fragment Transfer  
4707 (section 4.8), WS-Enumeration (section 5.0), and WS-Eventing filters (section 7.2.2). Since the full XPath  
4708 specification is large, subsets are typically required in resource-constrained implementations.

4709 The purpose of this section is to identify the minimum set of syntactic elements that implementations  
4710 should provide to promote maximum interoperability. In most cases, implementations will provide large  
4711 subsets of full XPath, but need additional definitions to ensure that the subset meets minimum  
4712 requirements. The Level 1 and Level 2 BNF definitions below establish such minimums for use in the  
4713 WS-Management space.

4714 This specification defines two subset profiles for XPath: Level 1 with basic node selector support and no  
4715 filtering (for supporting Fragment Transfer as described in section 4.8), and Level 2 with basic filtering  
4716 support (for WS-Enumeration and WS-Eventing). Level 2 is a formal superset of Level 1.

4717 The following BNFs both are formal LL(1) grammars. A parser can be constructed automatically from the  
 4718 BNF using an appropriate tool, or a recursive-descent parser can be implemented manually by inspection  
 4719 of the grammar.

4720 Within the grammars, non-terminal tokens are surrounded by angled brackets, and terminal tokens are in  
 4721 uppercase and not surrounded by angled brackets.

4722 XML namespace support is explicitly absent from these definitions. Processors which meet the syntax  
 4723 requirements should provide a mode in which the elements are processed without regard to XML  
 4724 namespaces, but may of course provide more powerful, namespace-aware processing.

4725 The default execution context of the XPath is specified explicitly for WS-Enumeration in section 5.3 of this  
 4726 specification, and in WS-Eventing subscription filters in section 7.2.2.

4727 For the following dialects, XML namespaces and QNames are not expected to be supported by default  
 4728 and may be silently ignored by the implementation.

4729 These are for informational purposes only and SHOULD NOT be identified as Filter Dialects in actual  
 4730 SOAP messages. Since they are XPath compliant (albeit subsets), the Filter Dialect in the SOAP  
 4731 messages is still that of full XPath:

4732 <http://www.w3.org/TR/1999/REC-xpath-19991116>

### 4733 13.1 Level 1

4734 Level 1 contains just the necessary XPath to identify nodes within an XML document or fragment and is  
 4735 targeted for use with Fragment Transfer (section 4.8) of this specification:

```

4736 <path> ::= <root_selector> TOKEN_END_OF_INPUT;
4737
4738 <root_selector> ::= TOKEN_SLASH <element_sequence>;
4739 <root_selector> ::= <attribute>;
4740 <root_selector> ::= <relpath> <element_sequence>;
4741 <root_selector> ::= TOKEN_DOT
4742
4743 <relpath> ::= <>;
4744 <relpath> ::= TOKEN_DOT TOKEN_SLASH;
4745 <relpath> ::= TOKEN_DOT_DOT TOKEN_SLASH;
4746
4747 <element_sequence> ::= <element> <optional_filter_expression> <more>;
4748
4749 <more> ::= TOKEN_SLASH <follower>;
4750 <more> ::= <>;
4751
4752 <follower> ::= <attribute>;
4753 <follower> ::= <text_function>;
4754 <follower> ::= <element_sequence>;
4755
4756 <optional_filter_expression> ::=
4757   TOKEN_OPEN_BRACKET <filter_expression> TOKEN_CLOSE_BRACKET;
4758
4759 <optional_filter_expression> ::= <>;
4760
4761 <attribute> ::= TOKEN_AT_SYMBOL <name>;
4762
4763 <element> ::= <name>;
4764
4765 <text_function> ::=
4766   TOKEN_TEXT TOKEN_OPEN_PAREN TOKEN_CLOSE_PAREN;
4767
4768 <name> ::= TOKEN_XML_NAME;
4769
4770 <filter_expression> ::= <array_location>;
4771
4772 <array_location> ::= TOKEN_UNSIGNED_INTEGER;
4773
  
```

## Web Services for Management

4774 This allows selecting any XML node based on its name or array position, or any attribute by its name.  
4775 Optionally, the text() function can trail the entire expression to select only the raw value of the name or  
4776 attribute, excluding the XML attribute or element name wrapper.

4777 Using the following XML fragment, some examples are shown assuming that the element “a” is the  
4778 context node:  
4779

```
4780 (1) <Envelope>  
4781 (2)   <Body>  
4782 (3)     <a>  
4783 (4)       <b x="y"> 100 </b>  
4784 (5)       <c>  
4785 (6)         <d> 200 </d>  
4786 (7)       </c>  
4787 (8)     <c>  
4788 (9)       <d> 300 </d>  
4789 (10)      <d> 400 </d>  
4790 (11)    </c>  
4791 (12)   </a>  
4792 (13)  <Body>  
4793 (14) </Envelope>
```

4794 Examples:

```
4795  
4796 (15) . // Selects <a> and all its content  
4797 (16) ../a // Selects <a> and all its content  
4798 (17) /Envelope/Body/a // Selects <a> and all its content  
4799 (18) b // Selects <b x="y"> 100 </b>  
4800 (19) c // Selects both <c> nodes, one after the other  
4801 (20) c[1] // Selects <c><d>200</d></c>  
4802 (21) c[2]/d[2] // Selects <d> 400 </d>  
4803 (22) c[2]/d[2]/text() // Selects 400  
4804 (23) b/text() // Selects 100  
4805 (24) b/@x // Selects x="y"
```

4806 Note that the only filtering expression capability is an array selection. Also note that XPath can return a  
4807 node set. In section 4.8 of this specification, the intent is to select a specific node, not a set of nodes, so  
4808 if the situation occurs as illustrated on line (19) above, most implementations simply return a fault stating  
4809 that it is unclear which <c> was meant and require the client to actually select one of the two available  
4810 <c> elements using the array syntax. Also note that text() cannot be suffixed to attribute selection.

4811 **R12.1-1:** A service which supports fragment transfer as described in section 4.8 of  
4812 this specification SHOULD support a subset of XPath at least as powerful  
4813 as that described in Level 1.

4814 Clearly, the service may expose full XPath 1.0 or any other subset which meets or exceeds the  
4815 requirements defined here.

4816 **R12.1-2:** A service which supports the Level 1 XPath dialect MUST ensure that it  
4817 observes matching of a single node. If more than one element of the same  
4818 name is at the same level in the XML, then the array notation MUST be  
4819 used to distinguish them.

4820 **13.2 Level 2**

4821 Level 2 contains everything defined in Level 1, plus general-purpose filtering functionality with the  
 4822 standard set of relational operators and parenthesized sub-expressions (with AND, OR, NOT, and so on).  
 4823 This dialect is suitable for filtering in WS-Enumeration and subscription filters using WS-Eventing. This is  
 4824 a strict superset of Level 1, with the <filter\_expression> production being considerably extended to  
 4825 contain a useful subset of the XPath filtering syntax:

```

4826     <path> ::= <root_selector> TOKEN_END_OF_INPUT;
4827     <root_selector> ::= TOKEN_SLASH <element_sequence>;
4828     <root_selector> ::= <relpath> <element_sequence>;
4829     <root_selector> ::= <attribute>;
4830     <root_selector> ::= TOKEN_DOT;
4831     <relpath> ::= <> ;
4832     <relpath> ::= TOKEN_DOT TOKEN_SLASH;
4833     <relpath> ::= TOKEN_DOT_DOT TOKEN_SLASH;
4834     <element_sequence> ::= <element> <optional_filter_expression> <more>;
4835     <more> ::= TOKEN_SLASH <follower>;
4836     <more> ::= <>;
4837     <follower> ::= <attribute>;
4838     <follower> ::= <text_function>;
4839     <follower> ::= <element_sequence>;
4840     <optional_filter_expression> ::= TOKEN_OPEN_BRACKET <filter_expression> TOKEN_CLOSE_BRACKET;
4841     <optional_filter_expression> ::= <>;
4842     <attribute> ::= TOKEN_AT_SYMBOL <name>;
4843     <element> ::= <name>;
4844     <text_function> ::= TOKEN_TEXT TOKEN_OPEN_PAREN TOKEN_CLOSE_PAREN;
4845     <name> ::= TOKEN_XML_NAME;
4846     <filter_expression> ::= <array_location>;
4847     <array_location> ::= TOKEN_UNSIGNED_INTEGER;
4848
4849     <filter_expression> ::= <or_expression>;
4850     <array_location> ::= UNSIGNED_INTEGER;
4851
4852     // Next level, simple OR expression
4853     <or_expression> ::= <and_expression> <or_expression_rest>;
4854     <or_expression_rest> ::= TOKEN_OR <and_expression> <or_expression_rest>;
4855     <or_expression_rest> ::= <>;
4856
4857     // Next highest level, AND expression

```

## Web Services for Management

```
4858     <and_expression> ::= <rel_expression> <and_expression_rest>;
4859     <and_expression_rest> ::= TOKEN_AND <rel_expression> <and_expression_rest>;
4860     <and_expression_rest> ::= <>;
4861
4862     // Next level of precedence >, <, >=, <=, =, !=
4863     <rel_expression> ::= <sub_expression> <rel_expression_rest>;
4864     <rel_expression_rest> ::= <name> <rel_op> <const>;
4865     <rel_expression_rest> ::= <>;
4866
4867     // Identifier, literal, or identifier + param_list (function call)
4868     <sub_expression> ::= TOKEN_OPEN_PAREN <filter_expression> TOKEN_CLOSE_PAREN;
4869     <sub_expression> ::= TOKEN_NOT TOKEN_OPEN_PAREN <filter_expression> TOKEN_CLOSE_PAREN;
4870
4871     // Relational operators
4872     <rel_op> ::= TOKEN_GT; // >
4873     <rel_op> ::= TOKEN_LT; // <
4874     <rel_op> ::= TOKEN_GE; // >=
4875     <rel_op> ::= TOKEN_LE; // <=
4876     <rel_op> ::= TOKEN_EQ; // =
4877     <rel_op> ::= TOKEN_NE; // !=
4878     <const> ::= QUOTE TOKEN_STRING QUOTE;
```

4879 This allows the same type of selection syntax as Level 1, but adds filtering, as in the following generic  
4880 examples, given the Level 1 example document above:

```
4881
4882 (1)  b[@x="y"]           // Select <b> if it has attribute x="y"
4883 (2)  b[.="100"]         // Select <b> if it is 100
4884 (3)  c[d="200"]         // Select <c> if <d> is 200
4885 (4)  c/d[.="200"]      // Select <d> if it is 200
4886 (5)
4887 (6)  b[.="100" and @x="z"] // Select <b> if it is 100 and has @x="z"
4888 (7)  c[d="200" or d="300"] // Select all <c> with d=200 or d=300
4889 (8)
4890 (9)  c[2][not(.="400" or @x="100")]
4891 (10) // Select second <c> provided that:
4892 (11) //   its value is not 400 and it does not have an attribute x set to 100
4893 (12)
4894 (13) c/d[.="100" or (@x="400" and .="500")]
4895 (14) // Select <d> provided that:
4896 (15) //   its value is 100 or it has an attribute x set to 400 and its value is 500
```

4897 In essence, this dialect allows selecting any node based on a filter expression with the complete set of  
4898 relational operators, logical operators, and parenthesized sub-expressions.

4899 **R12.2-1:** A service which supports XPath-based filtering dialects as described in this  
4900 specification SHOULD support a subset of XPath at least as powerful as  
4901 that described in Level 2.

4902 Clearly, the service may expose full XPath 1.0 or any other subset which meets or exceeds the  
4903 requirements defined here.

4904 In the actual operation, such as wsen:Enumerate or wse:Subscribe, the XPath dialect is identified under  
4905 the normal URI for full XPath:

4906 <http://www.w3.org/TR/1999/REC-xpath-19991116>

## 4907 **14 Appendix C: WS-Management XSD**

4908 A normative copy of the XML schemas [[XML Schema Part 1](#), [Part 2](#)] for this specification may be  
4909 retrieved by resolving the XML namespace URIs for this specification (listed in section 1.5).

## 4910 **15 Appendix D: Authors and Acknowledgements**

### 4911 **15.1 Additional Contributors**

4912 This specification has been developed as a result of joint work with many individuals and teams,  
4913 including:

4914 Paul C. Allen, Microsoft  
4915 Rodrigo Bomfim, Microsoft  
4916 Don Box, Microsoft  
4917 Jerry Duke, Intel  
4918 David Filani, Intel  
4919 Kirill Gavrylyuk, Microsoft  
4920 Omri Gazitt, Microsoft  
4921 Frank Gorishek, AMD  
4922 Lawson Guthrie, Intel  
4923 Arvind Kumar, Intel  
4924 Brad Lovering, Microsoft  
4925 Pat Maynard, Intel  
4926 Steve Millet, Microsoft  
4927 Bryan Murray, Hewlett-Packard  
4928 Brian Reistad, Microsoft  
4929 Matthew Senft, Microsoft  
4930 Barry Shilmover, Microsoft  
4931 Tom Slaight, Intel  
4932 Marvin Theimer, Microsoft  
4933 Dave Tobias, AMD  
4934 John Tollefsrud, Sun  
4935 Anders Vinberg, Microsoft  
4936

4937 This specification has been validated by an Interoperability Workshop. The details of this workshop can  
4938 be found here:

4939 <http://msdn.microsoft.com/webservices/community/workshops/mgmtinterop052005.aspx>

## Web Services for Management

4940 The authors would like to thank the participants for their efforts.

## 4941 **16 Appendix E: References**

- 4942 [1] **HTTP 1.1**  
4943 R. Fielding et al, "[IETF RFC 2616: Hypertext Transfer Protocol – HTTP/1.1](#)," June 1999.
- 4944 [2] **HTTPS**  
4945 E. Rescorla, "[RFC 2818: HTTP over TLS](#)," May 2000.
- 4946 [3] **RFC 2119**  
4947 S. Bradner, "[RFC 2119: Key words for use in RFCs to Indicate Requirement Levels](#)," March 1997.
- 4948 [4] **SOAP 1.2**  
4949 M. Gudgin, et al, "[SOAP Version 1.2 Part 1: Messaging Framework](#)," June 2003.
- 4950 [5] **WS-I Basic Profile 1.1**  
4951 <http://www.ws-i.org/Profiles/BasicProfile-1.1-2004-08-24.html>
- 4952 [6] **WS-Addressing**  
4953 D. Box et al, "[Web Services Addressing \(WS-Addressing\)](#)," August 2004.
- 4954 [7] **WS-Transfer**  
4955 J. Alexander et al, "[Web Services Transfer \(WS-Transfer\)](#)," March 2006.
- 4956 [8] **WS-Enumeration**  
4957 J. Alexander et al, "[Web Services Enumeration \(WS-Enumeration\)](#)," March 2006.
- 4958 [9] **WS-Eventing**  
4959 D. Box et al, "[Web Services Eventing \(WS-Eventing\)](#)," March 2006.
- 4960 [10] **WS-MetadataExchange**  
4961 K. Ballinger et al, "[Web Services Metadata Exchange \(WS-MetadataExchange\)](#)," September 2004.
- 4962 [11] **WS-SecureConversation**  
4963 G. Della-Libera et al, "[Web Services Secure Conversation Language \(WS-SecureConversation\)](#),"  
4964 May, 2004.
- 4965 [12] **WSDL 1.1**  
4966 E. Christensen et al, "[Web Services Description Language \(WSDL\) 1.1](#)," March 2001.
- 4967 [13] **XML Schema, Part 1**  
4968 H. Thompson et al, "[XML Schema Part 1: Structures](#)," May 2001.
- 4969 [14] **XML Schema, Part 2**  
4970 P. Biron et al, "[XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes](#)," May 2001.
- 4971 [15] **RFC 3986: Uniform Resource Identifiers (URI): Generic Syntax**  
4972 <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc3986.txt>
- 4973 [16] **MTOM: SOAP Message Transmission Optimization Mechanism**  
4974 <http://www.w3.org/TR/soap12-mtom/>
- 4975 [17] **RFC 3066: Tags for the Identification of Languages**  
4976 <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc3066.txt>
- 4977 [18] **Web Services Security (WS-Security 2004)**  
4978 <http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-wss-soap-message-security-1.0.pdf>
- 4979 [19] **Web Services Trust Language February 2005**  
4980 <http://msdn.microsoft.com/ws/2005/02/ws-trust/>
- 4981 [20] **Web Services Security Username Token Profile 1.0**  
4982 <http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-wss-username-token-profile-1.0.pdf>

- 4983 [21] **Web Services Security X.509 Certificate Profile**  
4984 <http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-wss-x509-token-profile-1.0.pdf>
- 4985 [22] **Kerberos based HTTP Authentication in Windows, Internet-Draft, June 2005**  
4986 <http://www.ietf.org/internet-drafts/draft-jaganathan-kerberos-http-00.txt>
- 4987 [23] **RFC 4122: A Universally Unique Identifier (UUID) URN Namespace**  
4988 <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc4122.txt>  
4989